



DS AUTOMOBILES

DS 3 CROSSBACK

HANDBOOK

Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyDS** smartphone application.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the DS AUTOMOBILES website, in the "MyDS" section or at the following address:
<http://service.dsautomobiles.com>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a DS 3 CROSSBACK.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. The **DS AUTOMOBILES** brand is marketed by Automobiles CITROËN, a public limited company with a capital of €159,000,000, the headquarters of which is at 7 rue Henri Sainte-Claire Deville, 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON and that is registered with the Nanterre Trade and Companies Register under no. 642 050199, hereafter referred to as the 'Manufacturer', who reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

All of the operating instructions and recommendations are provided in detail here to make the most of your vehicle. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide, which provides information about the warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with the vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, contact a member of the Manufacturer's dealer network, hereafter referred to as a 'dealer', or a qualified workshop.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment/button described with a black area



2

Contents

Overview

Eco-driving

01 Instruments

- 8 Digital instrument panel
- 9 Head-up display
- 11 Warning and indicator lamps
- 25 Indicators
- 27 Manual test
- 28 Distance recorder
- 28 Lighting dimmer
- 29 Trip computer
- 30 Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system
- 31 Touch screen

02 Access

- 33 Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key
- 35 Proximity Keyless Entry and Start
- 37 DS SMART ACCESS
- 37 Central locking
- 38 Back-up procedures
- 40 Doors
- 41 Boot
- 42 Alarm
- 44 Electric windows

03 Ease of use and comfort

- 46 Correct driving position
- 46 Front seats
- 48 Steering wheel adjustment
- 49 Mirrors
- 50 Rear bench seat
- 51 Heating and Ventilation
- 53 Manual air conditioning
- 54 Automatic air conditioning
- 56 Recirculation of interior air
- 56 Front demist – defrost
- 56 Rear screen demist – defrost
- 56 Heated windscreen and washer jets
- 57 Interior fittings
- 61 Courtesy lamps
- 61 Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps
- 62 Boot fittings
- 63 Boot lighting

04 Lighting and visibility

- 64 Exterior lighting control stalk
- 65 Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps
- 65 Direction indicators
- 66 Automatic illumination of headlamps
- 66 Headlamp beam height adjustment
- 67 Guide-me-home lighting
- 68 Automatic headlamp dipping
- 69 DS MATRIX LED VISION
- 71 Wiper control stalk
- 73 Changing a wiper blade
- 74 Automatic windscreen wipers

05 Safety

- 76 General safety recommendations
- 76 Hazard warning lamps
- 77 Horn
- 77 Emergency or assistance call
- 78 Electronic stability control (ESC)
- 80 Advanced Traction Control
- 81 Seat belts
- 83 Airbags
- 86 Child seats
- 88 Deactivating the front passenger airbag
- 91 ISOFIX mountings and child seats
- 94 i-Size child seats
- 95 Child lock

06 Driving

- 96 Driving recommendations
- 98 Anti-theft protection
- 98 Starting/Switching off the engine
- 99 Starting/Switching off the engine with DS SMART ACCESS
- 100 Electric parking brake
- 103 6-speed manual gearbox
- 103 Automatic gearbox (EAT8)
- 107 Driving modes
- 108 Hill start assist
- 108 Gear efficiency indicator
- 109 Stop & Start
- 110 Tyre under-inflation detection
- 112 Driving and manoeuvring aids – General recommendations
- 114 Speed Limit recognition and recommendation
- 117 Extended Traffic Sign Recognition
- 118 Speed limiter
- 119 Cruise control – particular recommendations
- 120 Cruise control
- 122 Memorising speeds
- 122 DS DRIVE ASSIST
- 123 Adaptive Cruise Control
- 127 Active Lane Keeping Assist
- 131 Active Lane Departure Warning System
- 134 Blind Spot Detection
- 136 Active Blind Spot Detection
- 136 Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance
- 139 Parking sensors
- 141 Reversing camera
- 143 Park Assist
- 147 DS PARK PILOT

07 Practical information

- 153 Compatibility of fuels
- 153 Refuelling
- 154 Misfuel prevention (Diesel)
- 155 Towing device
- 155 Snow chains
- 156 Roof bars
- 157 Bonnet
- 157 Engine compartment
- 158 Checking levels
- 160 Checks
- 162 AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

08 In the event of a breakdown

- 165 Warning triangle
- 165 Running out of fuel (Diesel)
- 165 Tool kit
- 167 Temporary puncture repair kit
- 170 Spare wheel
- 173 Changing a bulb
- 176 Changing a fuse
- 180 12 V battery
- 184 Towing the vehicle

09 Technical data

- 186 Engine technical data and towed loads
- 187 Engines and towed loads – Petrol
- 188 Engines and towed loads – Diesel
- 188 Identification markings
- 189 Dimensions

Audio equipment and telematics

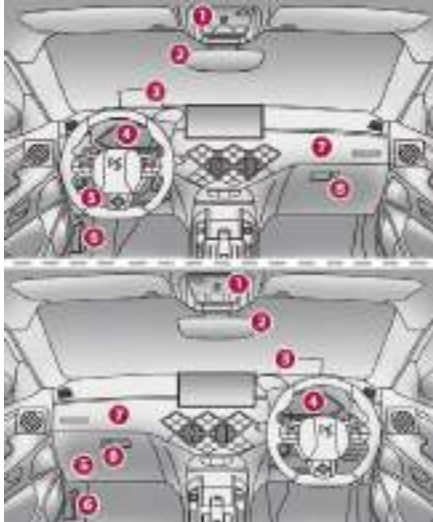
- Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system
- DS CONNECT RADIO
- DS CONNECT NAV

Alphabetical index

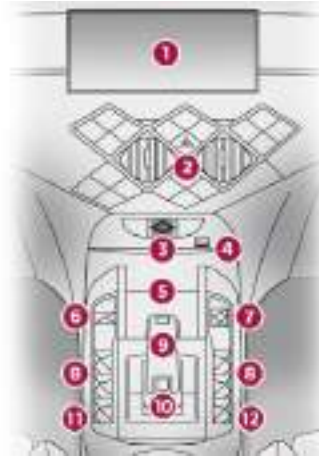
Access to additional videos



Instruments and controls



1. Front courtesy/map reading lamps
Emergency and assistance call buttons
Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
2. Interior rear view mirror
3. Head-up display
4. Digital instrument panel
5. Fusebox
6. Opening the bonnet
7. Front passenger airbag
8. Glove box



1. Touch screen audio system or touch screen
2. Hazard warning lamps
3. Starting/Switching off the engine
4. USB socket
5. Storage compartment or Wireless smartphone charger
6. Electric parking brake
7. Choice of driving mode
8. Electric windows
9. Gearbox
10. DS PARK PILOT
11. Central locking
12. Electric child lock

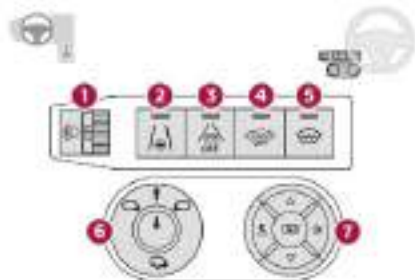
Steering mounted controls



1. External lighting/direction indicator controls
2. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer controls
3. Automatic gearbox control paddles
4. Audio system controls (depending on version)
 - A. Choice of instrument panel display mode
 - B. Voice commands
 - C. Decrease/increase volume
 - D. Select previous/next media
Confirm a selection

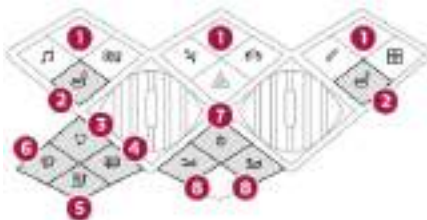
- E. Access to **Telephone** menu
Managing calls
- F. Select an audio source
- G. Display the list of radio stations/audio tracks
- 5. Horn
- 6. Speed limiter/Cruise control/Adaptive Cruise Control controls

Side controls



- 1. Halogen headlamp beam height adjustment
- 2. Lane Keeping Assist
- 3. Active Lane Departure Warning System
- 4. Alarm
- 5. Heated windscreen
- 6. Door mirrors adjustment
- 7. Head-up display controls

Central controls



- 1. Touch screen controls
- 2. Heated seats
- 3. Recirculation of interior air
- 4. Rear screen defrost
- 5. Automatic air conditioning off
- 6. Front demisting/defrosting
- 7. Touch screen on/off
- 8. Decrease/increase volume

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

Favour the use of the "Eco" driving mode by selecting it using the "Drive Mode" control.

If your vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, make use of cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Be proficient in the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down.

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to contribute towards reducing the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit the summer tyres.

Comply with servicing instructions

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting; visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with the regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Digital instrument panel

Customisable digital instrument panel.
Depending on the display mode selected, some information may be hidden or presented differently.



1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)
2. Cruise control or speed limiter settings, display of speed limit signs
3. Digital speedometer
4. Gear with an automatic gearbox
Gear efficiency indicator (arrow and recommended gear)
Driving mode selected
5. Engine coolant temperature gauge
6. Fuel gauge
7. Total distance recorder

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, the others can alter location.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:

- in fixed locations:
 - Rev counter.
 - Fuel gauge.
 - Distance recorders.
- in variable locations:
 - Gearbox and gear efficiency indicator information.
 - Engine coolant temperature gauge.
 - Digital speedometer.
 - Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and the active features, additional information may be displayed:

- Trip computer.
- Driving aid functions.
- Speed limiter or cruise control.
- Media currently playing.
- Navigation instructions.
- Information related to the vehicle's dynamics.

Customisation of the instrument panel

Depending on version, the appearance of the instrument panel is customisable (colour and display mode).

i Display language and units

When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour

Depending on version, the possible choices are:

- ☞ **"Champagne"** (white and champagne),
- ☞ **"Performance Line"** (gold and carmine).

If the vehicle is so equipped, selecting the "Sport" mode automatically changes the display colour of the instrument panel (red theme).

Choice of display mode



To modify the display mode of the instrument panel:

- ☞ Turn the knob located to the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different modes in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Once the selected display mode appears, press the knob to confirm.

If the knob is not moved, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the instrument panel.

- "DIALS": standard display of the analogue and digital speedometers, the rev counter, the fuel gauge, the engine coolant temperature indicator and the total distance recorder.
- "NAVIGATION": standard display, additionally showing the current navigation information (map and navigation instructions).
- "DRIVING": standard display, additionally showing the current driving aid systems information.

- "PERSONAL 1/PERSONAL 2": display of the information selected by the driver in the central part of the instrument panel.

To enter settings for the "PERSONAL" display modes and to select the information to be displayed:

With DS CONNECT RADIO



- ☞ Press **Settings** in the upper bar of the touch screen.



- ☞ Select "**Configuration**".



- ☞ Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

With DS CONNECT NAV



- ☞ Press **Settings** in the side bar of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select "**OPTIONS**".



- ☞ Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

- ☞ Select "**PERSONAL 1**" or "**PERSONAL 2**".

- ☞ Select the type of information using the scroll arrows in the touch screen:
 - "**Default**" (empty).
 - "**Eco-coaching**".
 - "**Trip computer**".
 - "**Media**".
 - "**G-meters**" (depending on version).
 - "**Power meters + Boost + Torque**" (depending on version).
- ☞ Confirm to save and quit.

The information is displayed immediately in the instrument panel if the corresponding display mode is selected.

i The type of information selected in the "PERSONAL 1" mode is not available in the "PERSONAL 2" mode.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a blade in the driver's field of vision so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

Displays during operation

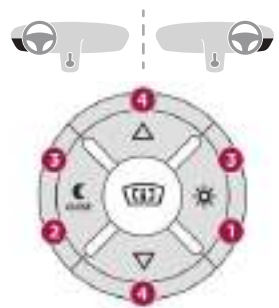


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

- A. The speed of your vehicle.
- B. Cruise control/speed limiter information and, if the vehicle is so equipped, the Road sign recognition function.
- C. If the vehicle is so equipped, inter-vehicle distance information, Lane Departure Warning System information, Active Lane Keeping Assist information, and automatic emergency braking alerts.
- D. If the vehicle is so equipped, navigation information.

i For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

Buttons



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.

Activation/Deactivation

- ☞ With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the blade.
 - ☞ Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the blade.
- The system's state is saved and restored on restarting the engine.

Height adjustment

- ☞ With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using buttons **4**:
 - up to move the display up,

- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

- ☞ With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using buttons **3**:
 - on the "sun" to increase the brightness,
 - on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede movement of the blade and its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference. To clean the blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products: risk of scratching the blade or damaging the non-reflective coating.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp continuously lit

The illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates the occurrence of a fault that needs further investigation.

If a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.





(1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.






List of warning and indicator lamps




Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
Red warning/indicator lamps				
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Maximum engine coolant temperature	Fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Carry out (1). If the electric parking brake is no longer working, immobilise the vehicle: ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, put the chocks against one of the wheels. Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

(1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.







Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	Braking	Fixed.	The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Electric parking brake	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	
		Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface). With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. With an automatic gearbox, select mode P . Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access. An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is not properly closed.	
	Seat belts not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	






Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain problems yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.	Carry out (2).
		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible. Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.
	Braking	Fixed.	A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.	Drive carefully. Carry out (3).

(1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.






(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.**(3):** Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.






Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Malfunction (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Carry out (3) quickly.
 + 	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).
 +  + 	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.	When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select P , then put the supplied chock against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by an alert message.	Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible. The brake can be applied or released manually.
	Automatic application (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.	Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	Engine diagnostic system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. You must carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The emissions control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR adjustment is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).






(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.





(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Emergency brake fault (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power. If automatic release is not available, use manual release.
	Hill start assist	Fixed.	The system has a fault. Carry out (3).
	Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Fixed.	The system is deactivated. The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and from around 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.
	Under-inflation	Fixed.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low. Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty. Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).


Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Parking sensors	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 Diesel engine preheating	Temporarily on (up to approximately 30 seconds in severe wintry conditions).	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold: - the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox. - the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox. If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.
 Airbags	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
 Front passenger airbag (ON)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.	In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!
 Front passenger airbag (OFF)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "OFF" position.	A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).




(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Low fuel level	Fixed, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.	When it first comes on, there remains approximately 6 litres of fuel in the tank (reserve). Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, at increased frequency as the fuel level goes down and comes close to zero.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. Never drive until completely empty , as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.
 Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated via the touch screen (Driving/Vehicle menu).	
 Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.	
 Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	If these lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Active Lane Departure Warning System	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
		Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Active Lane Keeping Assist	Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Stop & Start	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.	The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop. Reactivate the function via the touch screen configuration menu.
		Fixed.	The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.	The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is: - below 0°C. - above +35°C.









(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	AdBlue®	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).	As soon as possible , top up the AdBlue® or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® to avoid starting being prevented , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	SCR emissions control system	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to avoid starting being prevented .
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The lamp is on.	
	DS MATRIX LED VISION	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A DS MATRIX LED VISION headlamps or camera malfunction has been detected.	Carry out (2).

(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Green warning/indicator lamps			
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
	Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT	Fixed.	The function is active.
	Active Lane Keeping Assist	Fixed.	The function has been activated. All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.
	Direction indicators	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.
	DS MATRIX LED VISION	Fixed.	The function is activated.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated in the touch screen (Driving/Vehicle menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	



Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

i The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/Indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Service spanner	On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
 +	Service spanner flashing	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp.)	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.



- ☞ Press and **hold** the button on the end of the **lighting control stalk**.
- ☞ With no action on the brake pedal, press the **START/STOP** button once; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
- ☞ When the display indicates =0, release the lighting control stalk button; the spanner disappears.

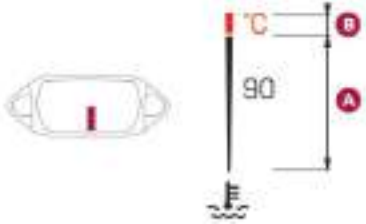
i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information



The service information can be accessed via the "Check" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the associated warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in red in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.

When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of the range

While the range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



The range information can be accessed via the "Check" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
	A top-up is vital , there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (0 km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection



If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "Emissions fault" message.



The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))

If the warning lamp is still on after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.

The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the display of a message ("Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

! Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" is displayed.

! To be able to restart the engine, call on a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.



It can be accessed via the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The following information is displayed in the instrument panel:

- when the next service is due,
- the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- the current alerts.

i This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Distance recorder

The distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since the first time it was driven.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed permanently. It stays displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, as well as when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles): the display of road speed must be in the official units for the country (km/h or mph). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system



☞ Press on the **Settings** menu.



☞ Select "**Display**".



☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the buttons.



You can also switch off the screen:



☞ Select "**Switch off screen**".

The screen goes off completely.

☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With DS CONNECT RADIO



☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



☞ Select "**Brightness**".



☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied immediately.

☞ Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:



☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



☞ Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.

☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With DS CONNECT NAV



- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

- ☞ Select "**OPTIONS**".



- ☞ Select "**Screen configuration**".

- ☞ Select the "**Brightness**" tab.



- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.
- ☞ Press this button to save and exit.

OK

You can also switch off the screen:



- ☞ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



- ☞ Select "**Switch off screen**".

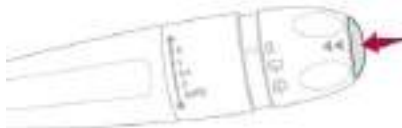
The screen goes off completely.

- ☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of data in the instrument panel



- ☞ Press this button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the different tabs in turn.
 - The current information tab with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.
 - Trips "1" and "2" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled.

Trip reset



- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (depending on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated during the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

This system gives access to:

- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- depending on version, air conditioning system controls.

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Recommendations

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands. Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Main controls



With the ignition off: system start-up.
With the engine running: mute.



Left thumbwheel: volume adjustment (rotation)/direct access to the **Media** menu (press).

Right thumbwheel: air flow adjustment (rotation)/direct access to the **Air conditioning** menu (press).



Access to menus.



Return to the previous screen or confirm.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

Menus



Radio

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Media

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Air conditioning

Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on the **Manual air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.



Telephone

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Driving

Activation, deactivation and settings of certain functions.



Settings

Main system settings.

Touch screen

This system gives access to:

- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice).
 - the heating/air conditioning controls.
 - the menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems.
 - the audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
 - the display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
 - Internet services and the display of associated information.
- and, depending on equipment, it gives access to:
- the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Some menu may display across two pages: press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select **"OFF"** or **"ON"**.



Settings for a function.



Access to additional information on the function.

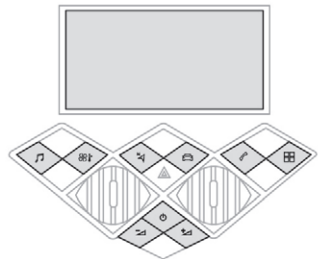
OK

Confirm.



Return to the previous page or confirm.

Menus



Press with three fingers on the touch screen to show all of the menu buttons.



Radio Media.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Air conditioning.
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on the **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connected navigation.*
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

* The availability of connected navigation services is confirmed by the display of the TomTom Traffic logo on the map. For more information, refer to the connected navigation section.



Driving or Vehicle.**
Activation, deactivation and settings of certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged on two tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

** Depending on equipment.



Telephone.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Applications.
Access to certain configurable equipment.



Settings.
Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Audio system on/off.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Volume adjustment.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Information bar(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the touch screen bar(s).

DS CONNECT RADIO upper bar

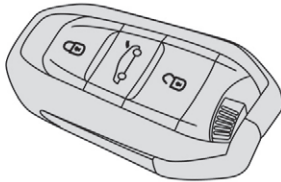
- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus information.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

DS CONNECT NAV side bars

- Exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Notifications.
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Access to the heated seat settings.
- Time.
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key

Remote control function



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle and the fuel filler flap.
- Unlocking/Locking the boot.
- Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Folding/Unfolding the exterior door handles.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Opening/Closing the windows.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

Integral key

The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:

- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



- ☞ To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Unlocking the vehicle



The settings for the selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) are made in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Complete unlocking

- ☞ Press the unlocking button.

The vehicle's door handles, and depending on version, the door mirrors, unfold.


Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel filler flap

- ☞ Press the unlocking button.
- ☞ Press it again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The complete or selective unlocking and the alarm deactivation, depending on version, is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators and lighting of the daytime running lamps.

Opening the windows

-  Depending on version, holding the unlocking button pressed for more than 3 seconds opens the windows.

The windows stop when the button is released.

Selective unlocking of the boot

By default, selective unlocking of the boot is activated.



- ☞ Press this button to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked. Depending on version, a long press on this button results in the boot opening slightly.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.

- ! Do not forget to lock the boot again by pressing the locking button.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

- ☞ Press the locking button.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators and the daytime running lamps.

The vehicle's handles retract and, depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

- i An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle has an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked and there is no action at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle has an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

- ! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows



Holding the locking button pressed for more than 3 seconds closes the windows.

- ! When closing the windows, ensure that no person or object could prevent their correct closure.

To leave the windows partly open on versions with alarm, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection.

For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked.



- ☞ Press this button.

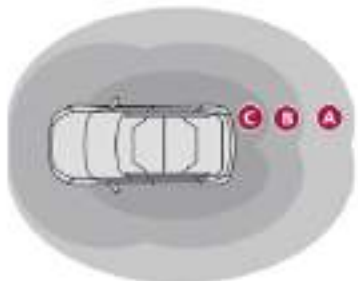
The courtesy lamps and door mirror spot lamps come on and the direction indicators flash for around 10 seconds.

Proximity Keyless Entry and Start

This Keyless Entry and Starting system allows automatic vehicle locking/unlocking simply by detection of the electronic key.

As long as the driver has the electronic key on their person, the vehicle unlocks on their approach and locks on their leaving.

Key recognition zones:



Zone A: welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 3 and 5 metres from the vehicle).

Zone B: automatic locking on leaving the vehicle (about 2 metres from the vehicle).

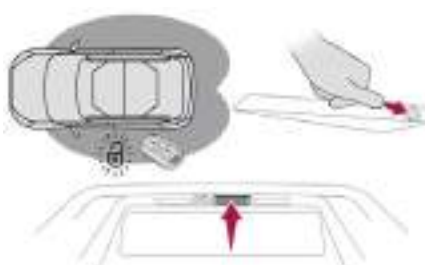
Zone C: automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 metres from the vehicle).



The activation/deactivation of the automatic functions can be set up in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

With the electronic key on their person, the driver can also lock and unlock their vehicle by pressing the retractable handles. For more information on **Retractable handles**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle



The selective unlocking settings (driver's door, boot) are made in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Complete unlocking

The vehicle (doors and boot) unlocks:

- ☞ Either automatically when the driver is approaching (zone C), if the automatic functions are activated.
- ☞ Or by a light press on a handle.

The unlocking, and the alarm deactivation depending on version, is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators and lighting of the daytime running lamps.

The vehicle's door handles, and depending on version the door mirrors, unfold.

i If the key remains in zone **B** for more than 15 minutes without any action on the vehicle doors, the automatic functions are deactivated and the vehicle locks (as confirmed by an audible signal). To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on one of the handles.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel filler flap

They unlock:

- ☞ Either automatically when approaching the driver's door, if the automatic functions are activated.
- ☞ Or by a light press on the handle.

The driver's door handle unfolds.

- ☞ Once inside the vehicle, to unlock all accesses, press the central locking button or pull the opening control of any door.

i If the user is outside zone A and presses once on the unlocking button of their electronic key, only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will unlock if selectivity is activated. Pressing the button again unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

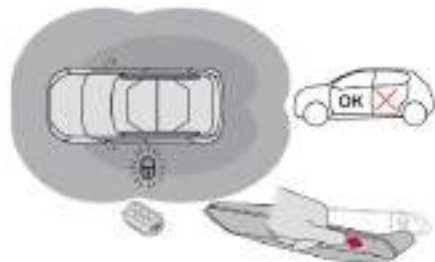
Selective unlocking of the boot

☞ Press the tailgate control to unlock just the boot.

The doors remain locked.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



With the doors and boot closed, the vehicle locks:

☞ Either automatically when leaving the recognition zone **B**, if the automatic functions are activated.

☞ Or by a light press on one of the front door handles.

The locking is confirmed by the illumination of the direction indicators and the daytime running lamps as well as an audible signal for the locking on leaving.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is unlocked with the handles retracted, a first press on one of the front handles unfolds the handle. The vehicle remains unlocked. Press the handle again to lock it.

Deadlocking



☞ Press one of the front handles lightly to lock the vehicle.

☞ Press it again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

i If the vehicle is unlocked with the handles retracted, a first press on one of the front handles unfolds the handle. The vehicle remains unlocked. Press the handle again to lock it.

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. The horn remains operational. **Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.**

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. However, if the vehicle has an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

i If the vehicle is unlocked and there is no action at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle has an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the key is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

- !** In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery:
- The unlocking on approach function (zone **C**) automatically goes into standby after several days of non-use (approximately one week). To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on one of the front door handles. At the next vehicle start, the automatic unlocking and locking functions will be reactivated.
 - After the welcome lighting is triggered several times in succession without starting the vehicle, it will be deactivated.
 - All of the "hands-free" functions go into extended stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To restore these functions, unlock the vehicle using the remote control and start the engine.

i **Electrical interference**

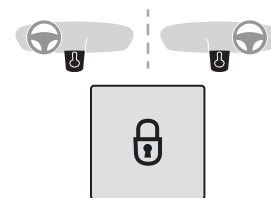
The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

DS SMART ACCESS


After activation by the customer, this function makes it possible, via the **MyDS** application, to access the vehicle, to start it and to delegate its use to people of their choice.

For more information on **DS SMART ACCESS** and its activation, install the **MyDS** application and refer to the corresponding section.

Central locking



Manual

 Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm central locking of the vehicle.

! The central locking does not take place if one of the doors is open.

i To unfold the exterior handles, press the button once when the vehicle is locked or twice when it is unlocked.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically when driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- ☞ Press the button until a confirmation message appears.

i **Transporting long or bulky objects**

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and an alert will appear.

Advice

! **Remote control**

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the remote control buttons when out of range of the vehicle: risk of making it inoperable. It would then be necessary to reinitialise it.

! **Anti-theft protection**

Do not make modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

! **Locking the vehicle**

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety precaution (with children on board), take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

i **Purchasing a second-hand vehicle**

Have the key codes memorised by a dealer, to ensure that the received keys are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate and a personal identification document.

The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

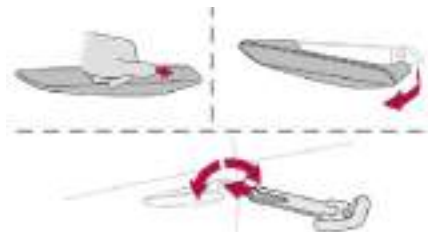
Use these procedures in the following cases:

- remote control battery discharged,
- remote control fault,
- battery failure,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ☞ Press the driver's door handle until the point of resistance to unfold it then pull it to access the lock.
- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key rearwards again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

The lighting of the direction indicators and daytime running lamps for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

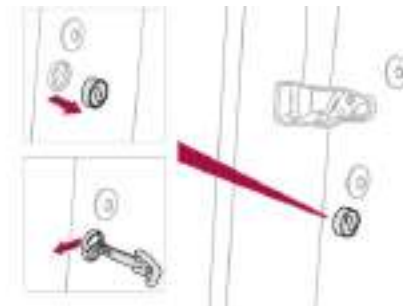
- ☞ If the handle is retracted, press on it up to the point of resistance to unfold it.
- ☞ Pull the handle to access the lock.
- ☞ Insert the key in the lock and turn it to lock the door.

Passenger doors

Unlocking

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking



- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ **Remove the black cap** located on the edge of the door using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed in the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery ref.: CR2032/3 Volts.



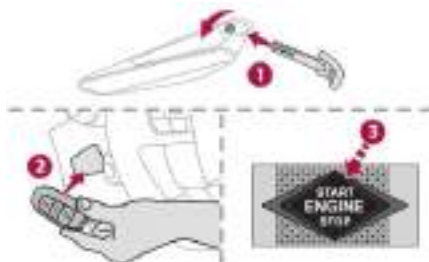
- ☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- ☞ Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

e Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



- ☞ Press the handle until the point of resistance to unfold it and access the lock.
- ☞ Insert the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to open the vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

- ! ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, from mode **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.

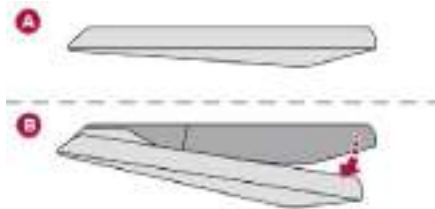
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Retractable handles

The doors are equipped with handles that unfold and retract automatically depending on the vehicle state:

- when unlocking the vehicle, the handles unfold to allow access to the vehicle,
- when the vehicle is locked, the handles retract.



A. Retracted position.

B. Unfolded position.

Once unfolded, the handles retract automatically after 3 minutes without the vehicle being locked.

It is possible to manually unfold the handles at any time by pressing lightly on them.

Depending on version, pressing on the handles also locks/unlocks the vehicle, if the electronic key is detected.

For more information on **Proximity Keyless Entry and Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

i In the event of a battery failure or system malfunction, manually unfold the driver's handle by pressing on it up to the point of resistance. Then pull the handle to access the lock and follow the back-up procedures.

For more information on **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Too frequent presses on the handle up to the point of resistance may damage its mechanism.

From inside the vehicle, it is possible to unfold the handles:

- by opening a door,
- by pressing the central locking button once when the vehicle is locked or twice when unlocked.

When driving, the handles automatically retract once the vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h).

Opening

From outside

- ☞ Unlock your vehicle to unfold the door handles.
- ☞ Pull the handle.

i When selective unlocking is activated, only the driver door's handle will unfold and only the driver's door can be opened.

From inside

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening lever; the exterior door handles unfold automatically.

Opening one of the doors from inside unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

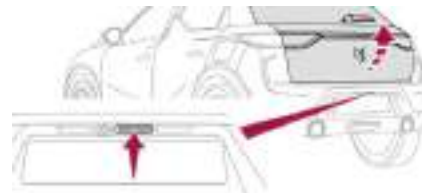
- i** With selective unlocking activated:
- Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
 - Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.
 - Opening a door from inside causes the unfolding of all the exterior handles.

Closing



If a door is not properly closed, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message if the engine is running, and an audible signal when the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Boot Opening



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or just the boot, press the opening control and then raise the tailgate.

Closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.



If the tailgate is not properly closed, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message if the engine is running, and an audible signal if the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- ☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



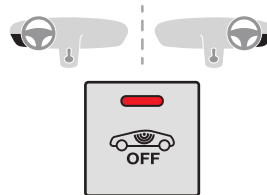
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Alarm

(Depending on version)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries, for example, to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ☞ Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock with the remote control or deadlock the vehicle.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

i The alarm does not activate when locking automatically from a distance.

! If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:



short press



long press

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system when approaching it.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until the indicator lamp is on fixed.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing the handle.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the handle. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the handle.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered ten times in succession. When the vehicle is unlocked, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Automatic activation

(Depending on country of sale)

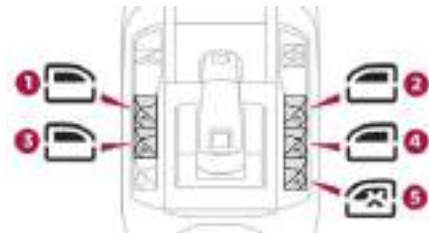
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or on the door handle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Left-hand rear.
4. Right-hand rear.
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located at the rear seats. Locking of the rear doors (depending on version).

Manual operation

- ☞ To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

- ☞ To open/close the window, press/pull the switch beyond the point of resistance; the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For children's safety, press switch **5** to deactivate the rear electric windows controls.

The indicator lamp for the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. With the ignition on, it remains lit, as long as the child lock remains activated. Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

! For versions fitted with an electric child lock, this control also deactivates the interior rear door controls. For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, or if the windows move abnormally, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each of the windows:

- ☞ Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- ☞ Continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the switch concerned. When the driver operates the passengers' electric window switches, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly. It is important to ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows. Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Correct driving position

- ! For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the height and reach of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.



- ! Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Front seats

- ! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Manual adjustments

Longitudinal



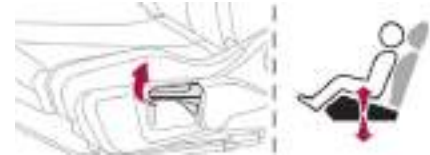
- ☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Backrest angle



- ☞ Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

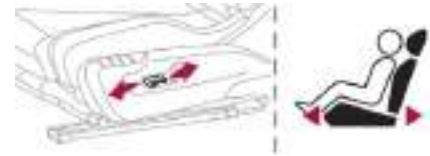
Height



- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it until the desired position is obtained.

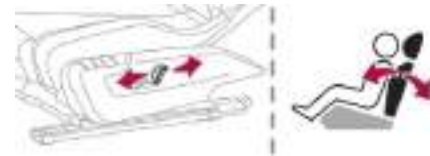
Electric adjustments

Longitudinal



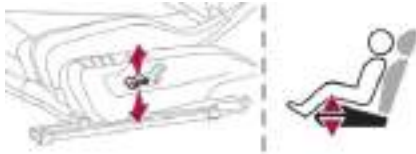
- ☞ Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

Backrest angle



- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or backwards.

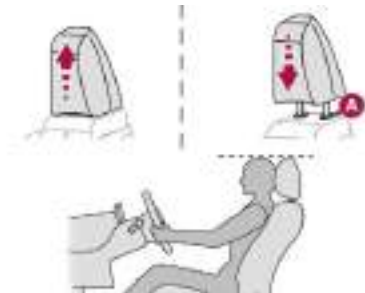
Cushion height and angle



- ☞ Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height and angle.

Front head restraints

Height adjustment



- ☞ **Upwards:** pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.
- ☞ **Downwards:** press lug **A** to lower the head restraint.

i The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- ☞ Tilt the backrest to the rear to make it easier to remove the head restraint.
- ☞ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Additional adjustments

Electric lumbar adjustment



- ☞ Press the + or – control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function

(Driver's seat only)



This function provides lumbar massage; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Activation/Deactivation



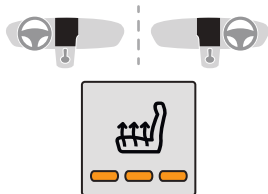
- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

Upon activation, the indicator lamp comes on. The massage function is activated for a period of one hour.

During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by a 4-minute break).

After one hour, the function is deactivated; the indicator lamp goes off.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running.

On/Off

The control buttons are installed below the touch screen.

- ☞ Press the button corresponding to your seat.

- ☞ Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on.
- ☞ To stop the heating, press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off. The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

e Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied. Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible. When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

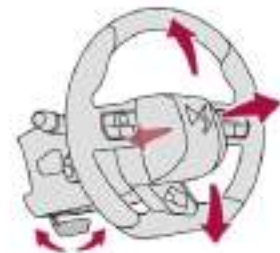
! Prolonged use of the heated seats is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- do not place sharp or heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat,
- never use the heating function if the seat is wet.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.

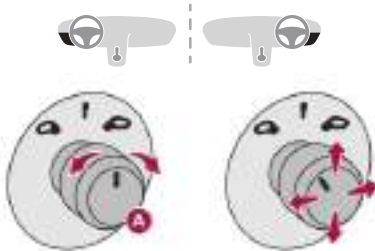
- ☞ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Adjustment



- ☞ Turn control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return the control to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- ☞ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If the vehicle is so equipped, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



- ☞ Turn control **A** to align it with the mark.
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Electric unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, move control **A** upwards.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Demisting/Defrosting



If the vehicle is so equipped, demisting/defrosting of the heated door mirrors is performed when the heated rear screen is switched on.

For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

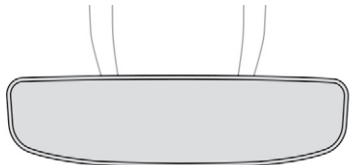
- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is in the "day" position.

Day/night position



- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Rear bench seat

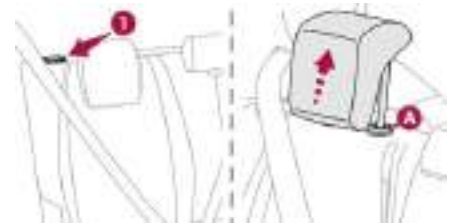
Bench seat with fixed cushions and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
 - ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.



The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using control 1,
- ☞ tilt the backrest slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

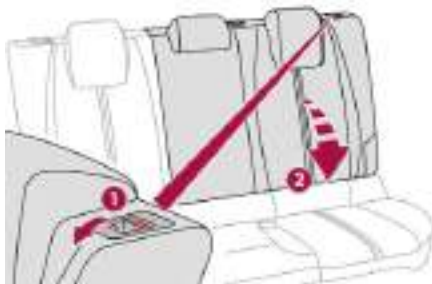
! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position. The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Folding the backrests

- ! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

First steps:

- ☞ Lower the head restraints.
- ☞ If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- ☞ Check that no person or object could interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.).
- ☞ Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles. Release them so that the backrest can be moved.

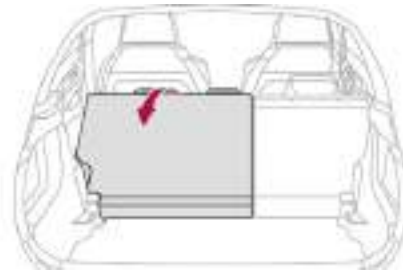


- ☞ Press the backrest release handle 1.
- ☞ Guide backrest 2 down to the horizontal position.

- i When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release handle.

Repositioning the backrests

- ! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ☞ Put backrest 2 in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release handle 1.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the operation.

- ! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – risk of severe injury!

Heating and Ventilation

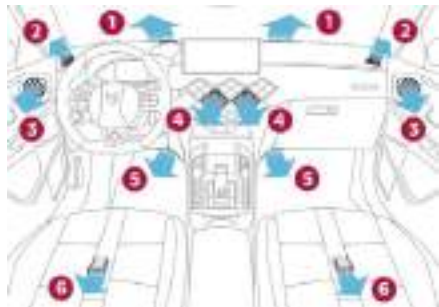
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windshield, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on your vehicle, the controls are accessible in the **"Air conditioning"** menu of the touch screen or are grouped together on the control panel of the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable and closable air vents.
4. Central adjustable and closable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of the recirculation of interior air – risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

e If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

i The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

i Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

☞ Ensure that the cabin filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

It is recommend to use a combined cabin filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

i Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** button to display the system controls page.



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air conditioning on/off.

Temperature adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **1** (- or +) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) or turn the knob **2** to decrease or increase the speed of the fan.

When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.

Air distribution adjustment

The air distribution in the passenger compartment can be adapted by using button **3**.



Central and side air vents, footwells.



Windscreen, central and side air vents, footwells.



Central and side air vents.



Windscreen.



Windscreen, footwells.



Footwells.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

System switch-off



☞ Press this button.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off. This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system. Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are regulated automatically.



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to access the system controls.



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air conditioning on/off.
5. Automatic comfort programme on/off.
6. Maximum A/C.
7. Access to the secondary page.

8. Adjustment of the automatic comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).

Temperature adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **1** to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) to decrease or increase the speed of the air booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased. When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops. "OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

Air distribution adjustment

The air distribution in the passenger compartment can be changed by using the buttons **3**.



Windscreen and side windows.

Central and side air vents.



Footwells.

Illumination of the button indicates the presence of pulsed air in the specified direction.

For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Automatic comfort programme

☞ Press button **5** to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the selected comfort level.

It is possible to adjust the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of three settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from the **OPTIONS** button.

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press button **8** repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed:



"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.



"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

AUTO



AUTO

Use the **"Normal"** or **"Fast"** modes to assure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats. This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of the **AUTO** mode, the indicator for the last setting remains on.

Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if this was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Maximum air conditioning

The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.

- ☞ Press button **6** to activate/deactivate the function.

Once the function is activated, the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

System switch-off



- ☞ Press this button.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the temperature required in the passenger compartment to be reached more rapidly.



- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

Front demist – defrost



- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

Rear screen demist – defrost

Demisting/defrosting only operates with the engine running. Depending on version, this also applies to the door mirrors.



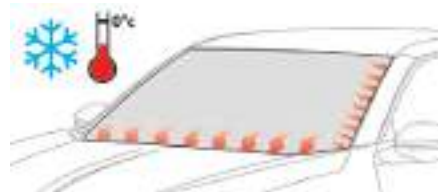
- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

e Switch off demisting/defrosting as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

Heated windscreen and washer jets

Depending on country of sale.



This function heats the windscreen and washer jets under cold conditions.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

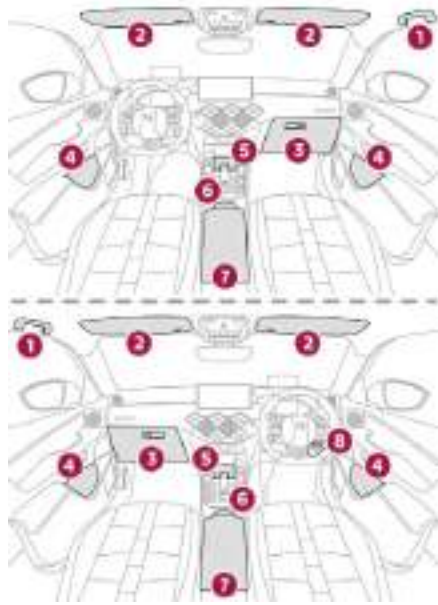
On/Off



☞ With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

The function is active as soon as the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically each time the engine is switched off.

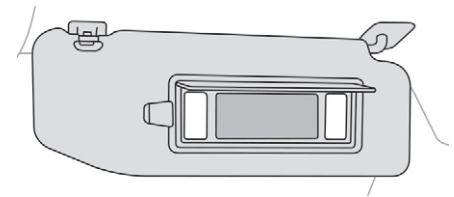
Interior fittings



1. **Grab handle**
2. **Sun visor**
3. **Glove box**
4. **Door pockets**
5. **Storage compartment or Wireless smartphone charger**

6. **Cup holder**
7. **Central armrest with USB socket and 12 V accessory socket (depending on version)**
8. **Storage compartment below the steering wheel**

Sun visor



☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.



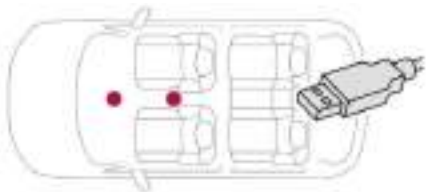
! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Central armrest



It includes a storage space.

USB socket(s)



They allow the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player or a USB memory stick.



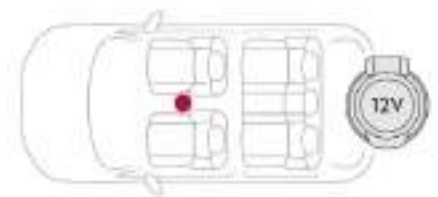
Depending on version, the USB socket located on the centre console also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain smartphone applications can be used on the touch screen.

To achieve the best results, it is necessary to use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.

These applications can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those of the audio system.

i When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle. For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

12 V accessory socket



To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an unapproved electrical device, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

FOCAL ELECTRA® Premium Hi-Fi system



Your vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity acoustic system designed by the French brand FOCAL®, a specialist in acoustics for more than 35 years and recognised throughout the world for its patented innovations and its unique audio signature.

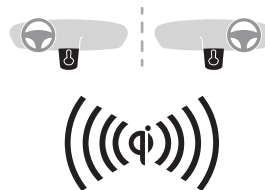
12 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:

- Central speaker/Satellite speakers: Polyglass technology delivering sound immersion and spatialisation.

- High fidelity woofer/mid-range speakers: Polyglass technology delivering balance and precise sound.
- TNF tweeters: Inverted dome aluminium technology giving optimum sound dispersion and very detailed higher frequencies.
- 12-way active amplification – 515 Watts: Hybrid Class AB/Class D technology providing breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.
- Subwoofer: 200 mm triple coil Power Flower™ technology for defined and dynamic reproduction of lower frequencies.

! Subwoofer under boot mat: Vacuum the grille regularly and be careful not to have any liquids nearby.

Wireless smartphone charger



It allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the

principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start. Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- ☞ Have the charging area clear and place a device at its centre.



Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green. It stays lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.



! Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!

Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.

Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.
---------------	---



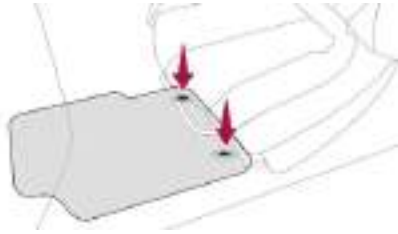
If the indicator lamp is lit orange:

- remove the portable device, then place it back in the middle of the charging zone.
- or
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- ☞ To remove the one on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fixings.
- ☞ To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fixings located below the seat.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps

Front courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on removing the key from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- on activating the remote control locking button, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

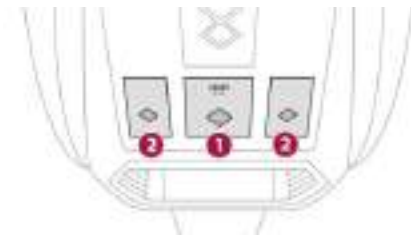


With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.



Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps



1. Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp
2. Front touch-sensitive reading lamps



3. Rear touch-sensitive reading lamps

Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp

It comes on gradually:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on switching off the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps come on and go off at the same time as the courtesy lamp.

A long press on the courtesy lamp completely deactivates it from coming on (as confirmed by the display of the "OFF" symbol).

Touch-sensitive reading lamps

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding reading lamp.

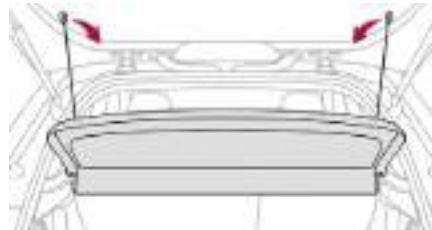
Boot fittings



1. Load space cover
2. Boot lamp
3. Stowing rings
4. Boot mat
5. Tool kit (depending on equipment)
6. Storage well

i The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets. They are used with the ISOFIX mounting rings located behind the rear seats. The retaining nets are available as an option or as an accessory. For more information, contact a dealer.

Load space cover



To remove the load space cover:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ gently lift the shelf, then remove it.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

Storage well



- ☞ Raise the boot carpet as much as possible to access the storage well.

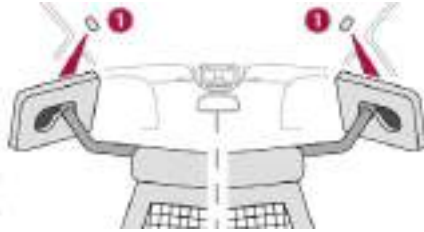
Depending on version, it includes:

- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel alone or with the tool kit.

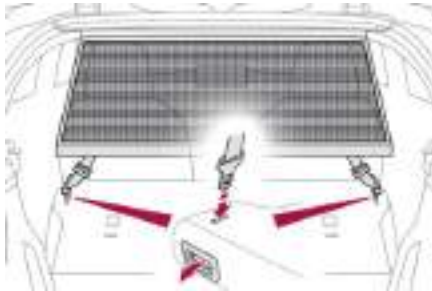
High load retaining net

This removable net allows the entire load volume behind the front seats to be used up to the roof when the rear seats are folded. It offers protection to the occupants when very sharp braking occurs.

☞ Fold down the rear seats.



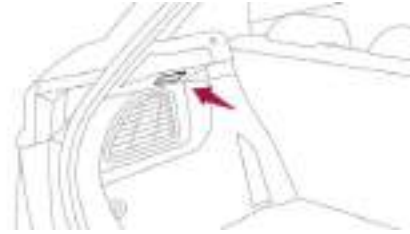
☞ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into fixing points 1 of the roof.



☞ Attach the net's straps to the lower anchoring points, located on the fixings of the rear bench seat backrest.

☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Boot lighting



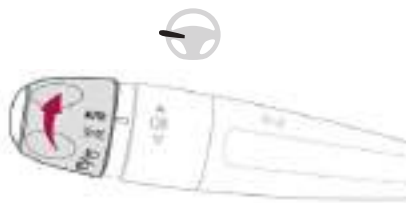
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened.

There are different lighting times:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting



AUTO

Automatic illumination of headlamps/
daytime running lamps.
Sidelamps only.



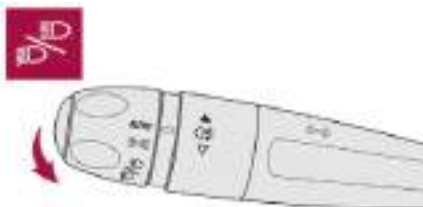
Dipped or main beam headlamps.



i "Highway function"

On versions fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, the range of the dipped beam headlamps is automatically increased once the speed of the vehicle is above 68 mph (110 km/h).

Headlamp dipping



Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In "AUTO" and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Rear foglamp



It operates with the dipped or main beam headlamps on.

Turn the ring forwards to switch it on and backwards to switch it off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

! Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).

Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

! Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

! Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "AUTO" position, then to the desired position.

If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge of the battery (entering energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

! Travelling abroad

Vehicles equipped with halogen headlamps:

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Daytime running lamps/sidelamps

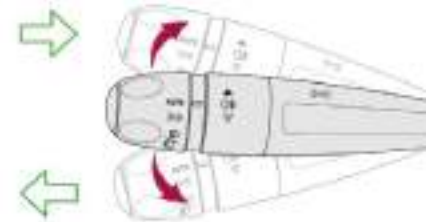
The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

! The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Direction indicators



☞ Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

! If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down, according to the traffic side (for example, when parking on the left, turn the lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This action is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action

on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.

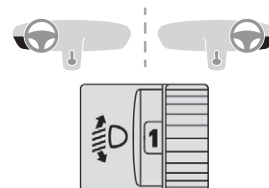
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of the halogen headlamps

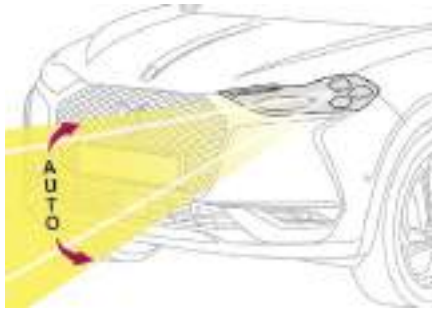


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of these headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0 Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1 5 people.
- 2 5 people + loads in the boot.
- 3 Driver only + loads in the boot.
- 4 5 6 Not used.

i The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic DS MATRIX LED VISION headlamp adjustment



This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlamp beams according to the load in the vehicle.



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not touch the DS Matrix LED Vision headlamps – risk of electrocution!

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the "AUTO" position, if the brightness is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Manual



Switching on/off

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk to switch the function on/off.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Welcome lighting

On unlocking the vehicle, in poor light conditions:

- with the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically,
- inside the vehicle, the courtesy lamps and footwell lighting come on automatically.



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the mirror and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on automatically:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on opening a door,
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the exterior welcome lighting and the guide-me-home lighting.

Switching off

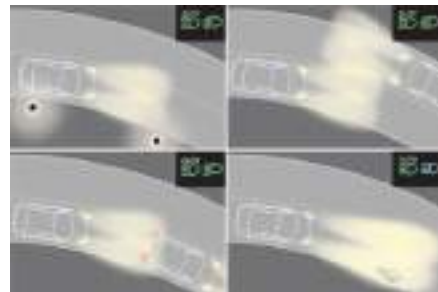
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Automatic headlamp dipping

This system automatically changes between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you exceed 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



Activation/Deactivation

- ☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



Activation and deactivation are done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is kept on, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

The system is deactivated when you switch on the foglamps or when the system detects thick fog.

When you switch off the foglamps or as soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ☞ A "headlamp flash" pauses the function:
 - if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
 - if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under conditions of poor visibility (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker, etc.),
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

- !** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

DS MATRIX LED VISION

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED headlamps with Matrix Beam function. This system automatically adapts the main beam according to the driving conditions, so that optimum lighting is maintained for the driver, without causing a nuisance to other road users.

- !** The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system is active from 16 mph (25 km/h) and deactivates below 9 mph (15 km/h).

Operation

Using a camera, the system detects the driving conditions (brightness, lights from oncoming or followed vehicles, road turns) and adapts the main beam headlamps accordingly.

The modules that make up the main beams switch on and off gradually, segment by segment, depending on the driving conditions detected:

Followed vehicle



When approaching a vehicle from behind, only those lamp segments directed at the followed vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" so as not to dazzle its driver.

Oncoming vehicle



When an oncoming vehicle approaches, only those lamp segments directed at this vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" during the duration of the approach.

Nominal main beam lighting is restored as soon as the vehicle is no longer detected by the system.

Entering an illuminated area

At the entrance to an illuminated area (for example, a town), the lamp segments are gradually switched off from the outside to the inside of the vehicle to switch to the dipped beams.

Exiting an illuminated area

The lamp segments gradually light up from the inside to the outside of the vehicle to restore the main beams.

Activation/Deactivation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.



Activation and deactivation are done via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs with the adaptive headlamp lighting or the camera, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked to the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under conditions of poor visibility (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker, etc.),
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

It is recommended to deactivate the function in foggy or snowy conditions or in case of heavy mist.

The function temporarily deactivates when the system detects thick fog or when you switch on the foglamps. This is signalled by the extinction of the indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

i Travelling abroad

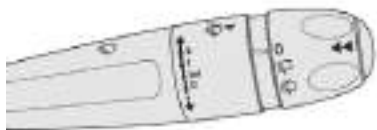
Vehicles equipped with the DS MATRIX LED VISION function:
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country of sale, deactivate this function to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.

Wiper control stalk

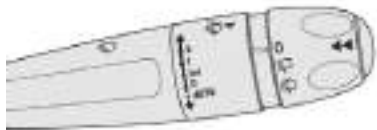
i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and on the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

With manual wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2

Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1

Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0

Off.



Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO ↓

Automatic.

Refer to the corresponding section.

i In position **1** or **2**, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h). When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

i If the ignition has been switched off with the windscreen wiper active, it is necessary to operate the control stalk to reactivate the wiping when the ignition is switched on (unless the ignition is off for less than 1 minute).

Single wipe

☞ Pull the stalk briefly towards you.

Front screenwash

☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

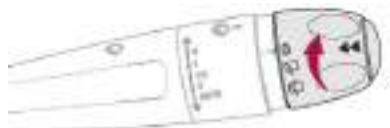
The screenwash and windscreen wipers operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled.

Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

i With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



To select the rear wiper: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.



Off.



Intermittent wiping.



Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring fully; the rear screenwash and wiper operate for as long as you hold the ring turned. Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.



The function is activated or deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is activated by default.

! In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing system, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



- ☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- ☞ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- ☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Do not touch the wiper blades – risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them – risk of damaging the windscreen!

- ☞ Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

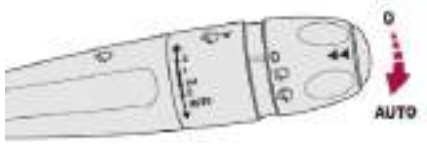
- ☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ☞ Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In AUTO mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. If rain is detected, the wiping adapts to the intensity of the rainfall automatically. Detection of rainfall is by means of a rain/sunshine sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition. In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



- ☞ Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

- ☞ Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int, 1 or 2**).



This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

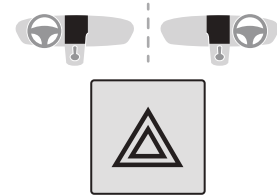
! Installing electrical accessories:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorised dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call

In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

Illumination of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service*.

Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp stays on while the call is maintained.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests the appropriate public emergency services to be sent**. In countries where the service is not operational, or where the locating service has been expressly refused, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

- Indicator lamp on (for 3 seconds) upon switching on the ignition: the system is operating correctly.
- Fixed red indicator lamp: system malfunction.
- Flashing red indicator lamp: replace the back-up battery.

In the last 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work. Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message**).

Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and of telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation

Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing buttons **1** and **2** and then a single press of button **2** to confirm.

i If you benefit from the DS CONNECT BOX offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, you have available additional services in your personal space, via the website in your country. For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control programme comprising the following systems:

- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

- Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

! When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

! After an impact, have these systems checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



Deactivation/reactivation is carried out via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:

Malfunction



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the systems.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations, not only about the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components but also the assembly and repair procedures used by dealers.

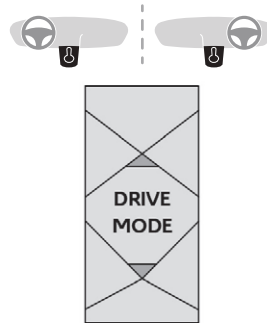
The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Advanced Traction Control

This state-of-the-art patented traction control system improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.

Activation



- ☞ Press the **DRIVE MODE** button to choose one of the three driving modes; the different modes are displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Depending on the circumstances, select "**Snow**", "**Mud**" or "**Sand**".

The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Deactivation

- ☞ Select "**Normal**" mode or any other driving mode.

The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a waterway.

Seat belts

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to automatically adjust to your shape. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.

The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiter

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

! In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of impacts, the pyrotechnic pretensioner device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

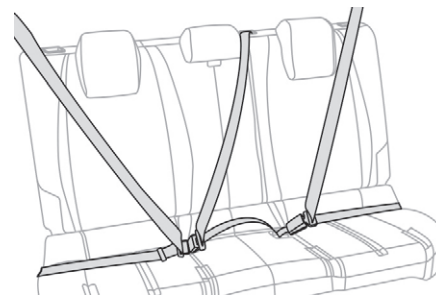
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.

The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
3. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remains on until the driver or the front passenger and/or one or more passengers in the rear fasten their seat belt.

Front seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp(s) comes on in

red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display, if the driver's seat belt and/or the passenger(s) seat belt is/are not fastened or unfastened.

Rear seat belt warning lamp(s)

The corresponding warning lamp comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display, if one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belts.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified in order not to affect its performance.

! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide. Have your seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

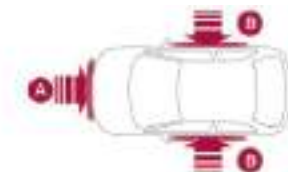
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Airbags

General information

System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger). If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

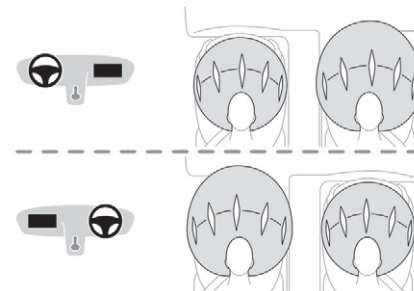
Impact detection zones



- Front impact zone.
- Side impact zone.

- ! The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

* For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and passengers in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder. At the front, each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side. At the rear, each lateral airbag is fitted in the rear pillar.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle

on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle. The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal upright sitting position.

Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must only be carried out by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed.

The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

At the rear, any objects placed on the outer seats or the folded backrest of the 1/3 bench seat could become projectiles when the lateral airbags are deployed.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Child seats

i The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

"Forward facing" or "Rearward facing"



- ☞ Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat or the "rearward facing" child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- ☞ Verify that the backrest of the "forward facing" child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and is ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front

- ☞ Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

"Rearward facing"

- !** The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys.**

"Forward facing"



! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Warning label – Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, repeated by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG. This could cause the DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY of the CHILD.

Passenger airbag OFF



Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

The control is located at the glove box.



With the ignition off:

- ☞ to deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "OFF" position.
- ☞ to reactivate it, turn it to the "ON" position.

When the ignition is switched on:



This indicator lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or



This indicator lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal the activation.

! To guarantee the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.
It is only installed on the side rear seats.
The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg







L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.
It is installed only on the front passenger seat
or on the side rear seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat with height adjustment (d) or without height adjustment (e)		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 (f)	Side rear seats Centre rear seat (g)	 		U	U	U	U

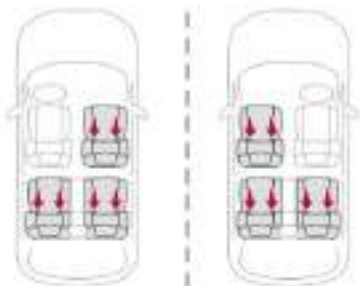
- U:** seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- UF:** seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.
- X:** seat position not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

- (a)** Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b)** Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.
- (d)** The front height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

- (e)** The backrest must be in an upright position.
- (f)** To install a child seat at the rear, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", move the front seat forward, then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (g)** A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

"ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:

- two rings **A** located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion,

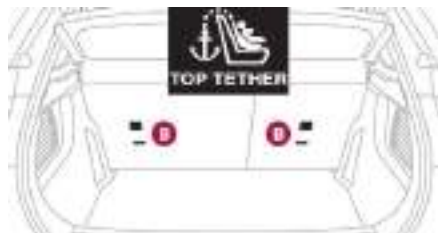
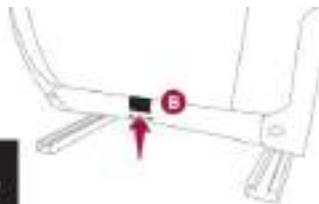


The 2 latches of **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

- one ring **B** located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing seats fitted with an upper strap.



Front seat



Rear seats

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
- ☞ Pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the head restraint rods.

- ☞ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ☞ Tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information about the installation possibilities for ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
 (size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg


Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case only the seat body is used and is attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"
 (size category: B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg


Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat position												
Row 1 (a) (b)	Passenger seat with or without height adjustment	With front passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
		With front passenger airbag activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF/IL		
Row 2 (b)	Side rear seats behind the driver (c) behind the passenger (d)		IL (e)		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seat not suitable for installing an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

- (a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.
- (b) Remove the head restraints.
- (c) Adjust the height-adjustable front driver seat to the maximum height position.
- (d) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully forward longitudinal position.
- (e) The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

i-Size child seats




i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

These i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position,

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision. For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position		Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat with height adjustment or without height adjustment (b) 	Deactivated: "OFF"	i-U
		Activated: "ON"	i-UF
Row 2	Rear side seats (c) 		i-U
	Rear centre seat 		Not i-Size

i-U: suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing and rearward facing.

i-UF: only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category which are forward facing.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.

(b) The front height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

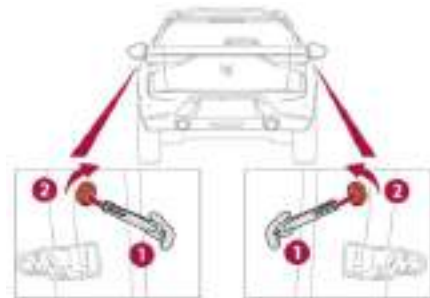
(c) If it is the passenger's seat, the front height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to the highest and fully forward longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened; if it is the driver's seat, highest and mid-runner position, backrest straightened.

Manual child lock

This system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior handle.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

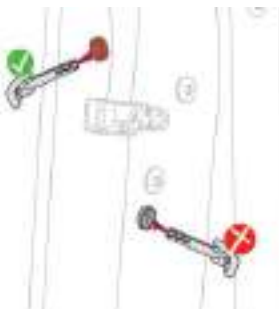
Locking/Unlocking



☞ To lock, turn the **red** control as far as it will go using the integral key:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

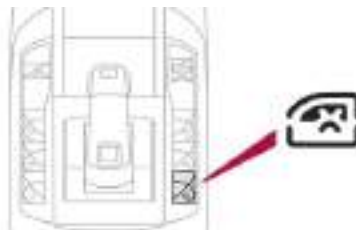
☞ To unlock, turn it in the opposite direction.



! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

This remote control system prevents the use of rear electric windows and, depending on version, the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles.



Activation/Deactivation



☞ With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.

When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to operate the rear electric windows from the driver's controls.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

- ☞ Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- ☞ Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen at any time.
- ☞ Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- ☞ During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

- ! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

- ! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

- ! **Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

- ! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

- ! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

- ! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.**

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



- If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:
- ☞ check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
 - ☞ deactivate the Stop & Start function,
 - ☞ drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
 - ☞ do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

i Respect the maximum towable weights. **At altitude:** reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the reduced air density at altitude decreases engine performance.

! **New vehicle:** do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i If a genuine towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant.

The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.

☞ To reduce the heating up, reduce the vehicle speed and the engine speed.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased sensitivity to wind that your vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection Electronic immobiliser

The keys include an electronic engine immobiliser system, whose secret code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine

i The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.

For versions equipped with Proximity Keyless Entry and Start, the electronic key is also detected in the boot.

If it is not detected, a message is displayed.

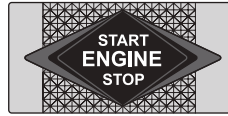
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.

If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.

i The lighting state of the "**START/STOP**" button indicates the presence or absence of the electronic key in the passenger compartment.

Starting

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal.



- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, starting will only occur once the preheater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.

In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

i If the engine stalls, release the clutch pedal and push it all the way down again, the engine will restart automatically.

Switching off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column.

! If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Switching the ignition on without starting

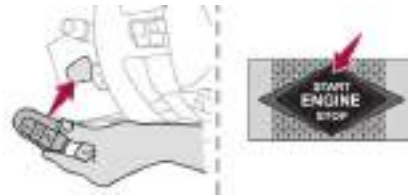
With the electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started, if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.



- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

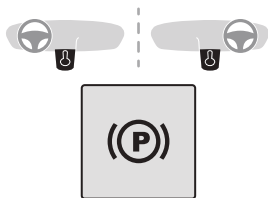
Starting/Switching off the engine with DS SMART ACCESS

After activation by the customer, this function makes it possible, via the **MyDS** application, to access the vehicle, to start it and to delegate its use to people of their choice.

For more information on **DS SMART ACCESS** and its activation, install the **MyDS** application and refer to the corresponding section.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



The driver can operate the control lever any time that the engine is running:

- ☞ to apply the parking brake, **briefly** pull the control lever,
- ☞ to release it, briefly **push** the control lever while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and on the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake applied".

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

- ! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake does not work. As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear. As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



- ! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed. If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

- ! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle as they could release the parking brake.

- ! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if the vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to mode **P** (automatic gearbox). When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- i** If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ☞ Pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the application instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

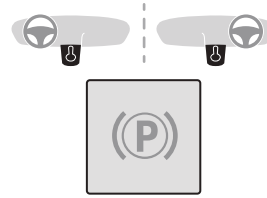
The application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.



With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

- i** With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- !** When stationary with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily: risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

- !** Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

- i** With automatic operation, it is also possible to manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ☞ Switch off the engine.
Illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever confirm the application of the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For further information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound if the driver's door is opened. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.

- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off).

Emergency braking

In the event of a fault with the brake pedal or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction), a continuous pull on the electric parking brake control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled; it is interrupted when the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

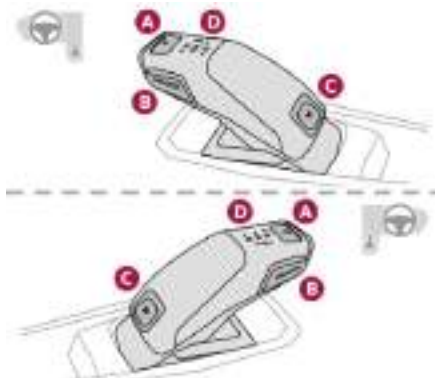
Automatic gearbox (EAT8)

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with a push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles situated behind the steering wheel.

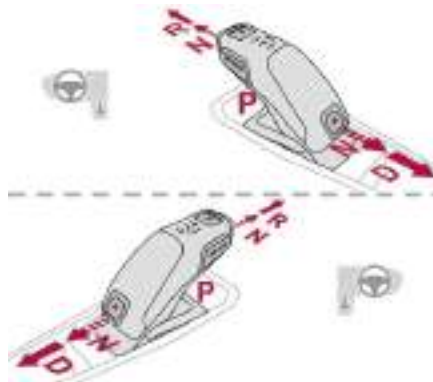
Gearbox selector positions

- P.** Park.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.
- D.** Driving in automatic mode.
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
- M.** Driving in manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering mounted controls.

Push selector



- A. Button **P**.
To put the gearbox into Park mode.
- B. **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal.
Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.
- C. Button **M**.
To change from mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
(Depending on version: with DS PARK PILOT, manual mode is accessed via the **DRIVE MODE** control)
- D. Gearbox state indicators (**P**, **R**, **N**, **D**).



- ☞ Move the selector by pressing it forward (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**) once or twice, going beyond the point of resistance if necessary.

The push selector returns to its initial position when released.

For example, to change from **P** to **R**, either push forward twice without going beyond the point of resistance or push just once going beyond the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.

They cannot be used to engage neutral or to select or come out of reverse.



- ☞ Pull the "+" or "-" paddle towards you and release to change up or down a gear, respectively.

Displays in the instrument panel

With the ignition on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1...D8: automatic mode.

S: Sport programme

M1...M8: manual mode.

-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**.

The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time – risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chock supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

- From mode **P**:
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Slow down until you come to a stop.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal, then press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ While maintaining the presses, select mode **R**.

Permanent manual mode

Switching to the mode:

With EAT8 without DS PARK PILOT button:

- ☞ with mode **D** selected in advance,
- ☞ press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.

With EAT8 and DS PARK PILOT button:

- ☞ press the **DRIVE MODE** control,
- ☞ select "Manual" mode which is displayed in the instrument panel.

Exiting the mode:

- ☞ push forwards once to return to **D**.
- or
- ☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp for the button goes off.
- or
- ☞ select another mode using the **DRIVE MODE** control.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheeling

To put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, with the engine switched off:

- ☞ with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select **N**,
- ☞ switch off the engine,
- ☞ within 5 seconds, switch the ignition on again,
- ☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forward or backward once to confirm **N** and manually release the electric parking brake,
- ☞ switch off the ignition.

After this time limit, the gearbox engages mode **P**; it is then necessary to restart the procedure.

i If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the outside temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving. For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the road speed and engine speed permit.

Moving off

From mode **P**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.

- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Push once or twice backward to select automatic mode **D**, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ☞ Fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push backward to select automatic mode **D**, or forward, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **D** or **R**:

- ☞ Release the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

i In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox, when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically and immediately. However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing for the process of putting the vehicle into free-wheeling mode).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake has been applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those in the instrument panel.

Malfuncions

Gearbox malfunction



This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive cautiously and visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In certain cases, the selector lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel.

Major malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message.

! Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a dealer or a qualified workshop.
When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into mode **P** automatically.

Driving modes

Different driving modes are available. They correspond to specific settings of the vehicle. Each time the ignition is switched on, "**Normal**" mode is selected by default.

"Eco" mode

Reduces fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the accelerator pedal, the automatic gearbox and the gear efficiency indicator.

Free-wheeling in "**Eco**" mode: depending on version, with the EAT8 gearbox, switching into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking. You can save fuel by taking your foot completely off the accelerator pedal in anticipation of slowing down.

"Normal" mode

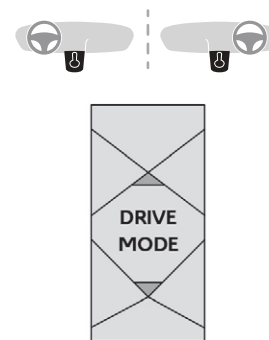
To return to the vehicle's original settings.

"Sport" mode

Allows for more dynamic driving with action on the power steering and on the accelerator and gear changes with an automatic gearbox. The vehicle's dynamic parameters can be displayed in the instrument panel.

Choice of a driving mode

The selection control for a driving mode depends on the vehicle equipment:



The mode selected is activated immediately.

Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

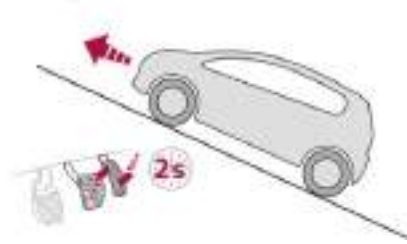
This system is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. After that, ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the electric parking brake control lever are on fixed.

! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this indication without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear shift recommendations must not be considered as compulsory. Indeed, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

i The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.

Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.



Deactivation/reactivation is done via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

A message in the instrument panel confirms the change of state.

When the function is deactivated, if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamps



Function activated.



Function deactivated or malfunction.



Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

! Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.

- With a **manual gearbox**: with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.

- With an **automatic gearbox**: with the brake pedal depressed until the vehicle stops or the gear selector in position **N**, with the vehicle stopped.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine does not go into standby in the following cases.

- Steep slope (rising or falling).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

i After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available as long as the vehicle has not reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

i During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**:
 - With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
 - With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
 - With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
 - Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine restarts automatically in the following cases.

- With a manual gearbox: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h),
- With an automatic gearbox, in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h),



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

- ☞ Have the vehicle checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if this fault occurs.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the "**START/STOP**" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which**

must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding,
- lengthens braking distances,
- causes premature wear of the tyres,
- increases fuel consumption.

i The inflation pressures specified for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- ☞ Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

Reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.

Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Malfunction



The illumination of these warning lamps indicates a fault with the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids – General recommendations

i Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane. The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

i **Driving aids**
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

i **Manoeuvring aids**
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

! **Radar**
The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged. If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.



! Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

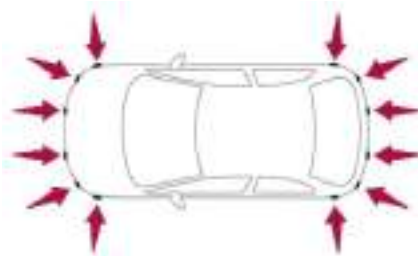
On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: **"Driving aids camera: Visibility limited, see user guide"**.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

i Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast. Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.



! Sensors

The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.

The sensors do not necessarily detect obstacles that are too low (e.g. pavements, studs) or too thin (e.g. trees, posts, wire fences).

Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

i Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

! Mats

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

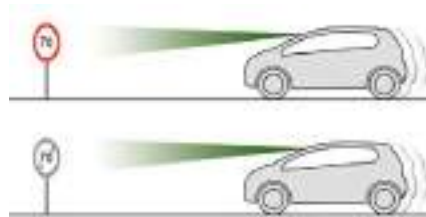
- ☞ ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- ☞ never fit one mat on top of another.

i Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally. In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.




This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:







- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

- Signs detected by the camera indicating the area of a junction:

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a junction area Example: <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	Without DS CONNECT NAV 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) With DS CONNECT NAV Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

- Certain qualifier plates are detected by the camera:

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit in rain Examples: <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit if towing <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in snow Example: <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times Example: <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit. For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority in comparison with the display by the system. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

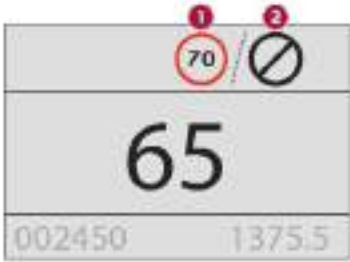
Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle's speed exceeds it by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (example: 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed flashes for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit,
- young drivers.

It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- road signs that are obstructed, do not comply with the standard, are damaged or distorted,
- obsolete or incorrect maps.

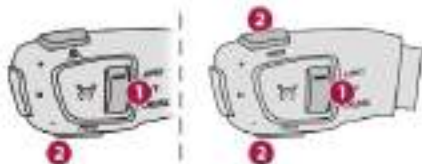
Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button. If rain is detected, the system will propose to the driver a speed setting lower than the speed read/obtained from the map to adapt to the weather conditions (example: on a motorway, the proposed speed will be 68 mph (110 km/h) instead of 81 mph (130 km/h)).

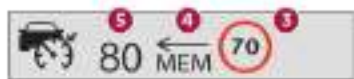
i For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control** or **Adaptive Cruise Control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and "MEM" flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

! If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the "MEM" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

☞ Press button **2 once** to save the suggested speed value.

A message is displayed to confirm the request.

☞ Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This additional system recognises these **road signs** and displays them in the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected.

One-way street: if you start driving the wrong way down a one-way street, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).

Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The actual road signs always take priority over the display from the system. The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation/Deactivation



The activation and deactivation is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

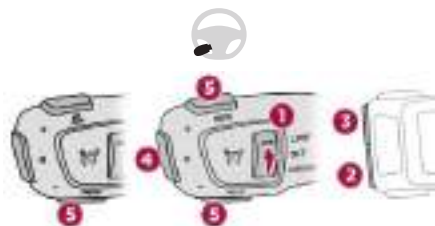


This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

Steering mounted control

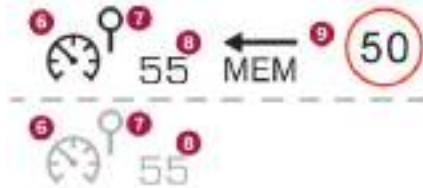


1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF.
2. Reduce the speed setting.
3. Increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored.

5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.
- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

i When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning will sound.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting using the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of + or – 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of + or – 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal down fully. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed speed setting flashes. Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "OFF" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the speed limiter. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control – particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the speed setting may not be reached or maintained.

i Exceeding the programmed speed setting

The speed setting can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes). To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when this speed is reached again, the display of the speed stops flashing).

! Operating limits

Never use the system in the following situations:

- in an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road,
- in heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function),
- on winding or steep roads,
- on slippery or flooded roads,
- in unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control – particular recommendations**.



This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.

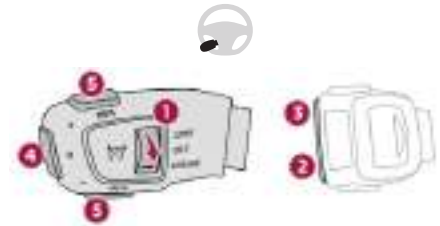
The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher. With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

i The cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type on engines fitted with Stop & Start.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

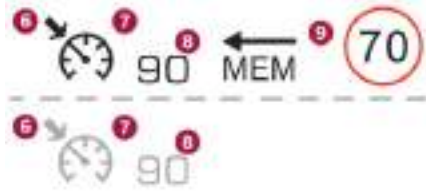
Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF.
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.
4. Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**; the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

Release the accelerator pedal.

- ☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts the function (pause).
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

- The operation of the cruise control can also be temporarily interrupted (pause):
 - by pressing the brake pedal,
 - automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ In steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**.
- ☞ Continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

- ! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

- ! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ Press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings.
- ☞ Press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Switching off

- Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**OFF**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the cruise control system. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Memorising speeds

Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.

You can memorise several speed settings for each for system.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

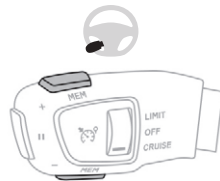
! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Modifying a speed setting



From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select "**Driving functions**", then "**Memorised speed settings**".

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

DS DRIVE ASSIST

Only available for the versions with automatic gearbox.

This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle as a result of the Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop & Go function working alongside the Active Lane Keeping Assist.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

This system is especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on **Adaptive Cruise Control** and **Active Lane Keeping Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle. Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control – particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle. With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle stops completely, and also manages its restarting.



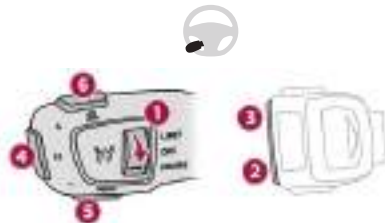
To do so, it has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

Steering mounted control



- 1 ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF.
- 2 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.

- 3 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.
- 4 Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored. Confirmation of the restart of the vehicle after automatic stop (versions with Stop & Go function).
- 5 Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** displayed).
- 6 Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front.

Use

Activating the system (paused)

- ☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Starting cruise control and selecting a speed

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h). With an automatic EAT8 gearbox, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

- ☞ Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately in operation (green display).

- ☞ Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Pausing/resuming cruise control

- ☞ Press **4** or press the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, you may also:
 - shift from mode **D** to **N**,
 - press the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds,
 - press the electric parking brake control.
- ☞ Press **4** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
 - when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox,
 - when the speed of the engine goes below 1,100 rpm with a manual gearbox,
 - by triggering of the ESC system.

With an EAT8 gearbox, following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to be restarted within the 3 seconds

following immobilisation, press button **4** or the accelerator pedal to start off again. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control which was paused, the message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Using the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation function to change the speed setting

- ☞ Press **5** to accept the speed suggested by the function in the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

- ☞ Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal", "Close"), then press again to select a threshold. After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal down fully. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated as long as you continue to accelerate. "Cruise control suspended" is displayed.

Deactivating the system

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

Displays in the instrument panel



7. Vehicle detected by the system (symbol full).
8. Cruise control active (colour not grey).
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
11. Vehicle held stopped (versions with automatic gearbox).





12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system.


Messages and alerts


To benefit from the following information in the instrument panel, select the **DRIVING** or **Driving aids** display mode.


i The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

 "Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.

 "Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.

 "Cruise control paused", vehicle detected.

 "Cruise control active", vehicle detected.

 "Take back control" (orange)



e Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



"Take back control" (red)



e **Take back immediate control of the vehicle:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).

Stop & Go function



"To restart, press on the accelerator or press button **II**" (button **4**).



The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds, the vehicle starts off again automatically and gradually.

After 3 seconds, the driver must accelerate or press button **4** to move off again.

! During the vehicle immobilisation phase, it is recommended:

- Not to open the doors.
- Not to drop off or pick up passengers.
- Not to engage reverse gear.

! When the vehicle restarts, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians or animals which may not be detected properly.

Operating limits

The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

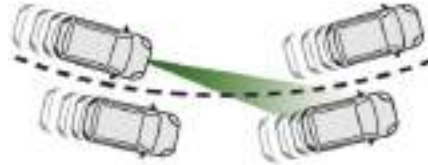
Cases of non-detection by the system:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations where the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



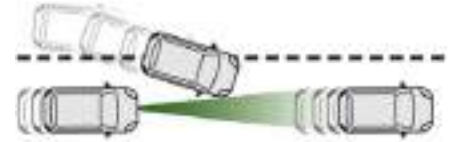
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.
- Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

! Pay particular attention:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

! If one of these malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
- Brake lamps not working.

! If the vehicle has been subject to one of the following modifications, do not use the system:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Towing.
- Front end of the vehicle changed (e.g. addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper).

Malfunction



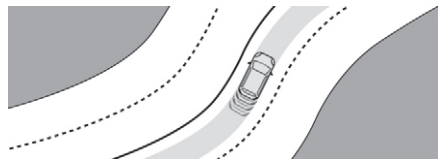
If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms the malfunction.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Lane Keeping Assist



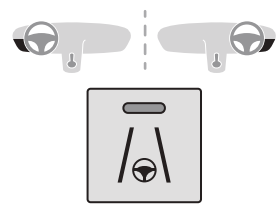
Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**. Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen, the system identifies lane markings and steers the vehicle inside this lane to keep it in the lateral position chosen by the driver.

This function is primarily suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

Conditions for operation

- The Adaptive Cruise Control must be active.
- The ESC system must be operating.
- The ASR must not be deactivated.
- No trailer detected.
- A spare wheel of the "space-saver" type must not be in use.
- The vehicle must not be subject to strong lateral accelerations.
- The direction indicators must not be activated.

Activation/Deactivation



☞ With the Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop & Go function activated, press this button.

The action is confirmed by:

- Illumination of the indicator lamp in the button in green.
- Display of the following symbol in the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbol in the instrument panel depends on the operating state of the system:

(grey colour)



At least one of the operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green colour)



All of the operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange colour)



The system has a fault.

If the driver no longer wishes to benefit from the system for a while, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.

i The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Cruise control

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly.

When cruise control is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane. This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.

The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.

The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, whilst keeping hands on the steering wheel, they must release the pressure to let the system resume control of the steering, but the vehicle will not be automatically centred within the lane.

Pausing/Suspension of the system

! The driver must intervene as soon as they believe that the traffic conditions or state of the road surface make this necessary by moving the steering wheel to suspend the system temporarily. Pressing the brake pedal to pause the cruise control will also pause the system.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates if there is no reaction from the driver.

i After suspension due to the prolonged release of pressure holding the steering wheel, you must reactivate the function by pressing the button again.

Automatic pausing:















- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane markings. In this case, the Active Lane Departure Warning System can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are regained.

On action by the driver: suspension

- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (pausing the cruise control until its reactivation) or accelerator pedal (suspension during the time when the pedal is pressed).
- Pausing the cruise control.
- Deactivation of the ASR.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator lamp in the button	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Off	CRUISE	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise control paused; Active lane keeping assist not active.
Off	CRUISE	 (green)	 (grey)	Cruise control active; Active lane keeping assist not active.
Green	CRUISE	 (green)	 (green)	DS DRIVE ASSIST active, operates normally (correction is executed at the steering wheel).
Green	CRUISE	 (grey)	 (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST paused.
Green	CRUISE	 (green)/(grey)	 (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST active, not all conditions required for Active lane keeping assist have been met.
Green	OFF or LIMIT	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise control not active, not all conditions required for Active lane keeping assist have been met.
Green	CRUISE	 (green)/(grey)	 (grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST suspended: cruise control and Active lane keeping assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"Activate the cruise control to use the Active lane keeping assist system"	Activation of the Active lane keeping assist while the cruise control is not active.
"Unsuitable conditions, Activation on stand-by"	Activation of the Active lane keeping assist while not all conditions are met.
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold the wheel"	Actual or imminent loss of the Active lane keeping assist.
"Retake control"	Simultaneous loss of the cruise control and the Active lane keeping assist.

Operating limits

i The Active Lane Keeping Assist system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

The system may fail to operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:

- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windscreen area in front of the camera being dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker.

- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

! The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When towing, especially with an unconnected or unapproved trailer.
- Poor weather conditions.
- Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Malfunctions



(orange colour)

A system malfunction is indicated by the Service warning lamp coming on and this (orange) symbol, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal.

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the road and at the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version). This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

- The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
- The traffic lane must be delimited by a dividing line.
- The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.

- The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
- The ESC system must be activated and not faulty.

! The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (for example, if the dividing line marking disappears).

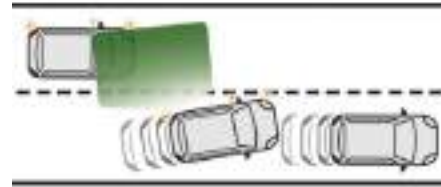
Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the Blind Spot Detection system activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.






For more information on the **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding section.






! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situations.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		 (orange)/(green) "Hold the wheel".	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory. - If the steering wheel is not properly held, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, provided the trajectory correction is not completed or the driver has not taken proper hold of the steering wheel.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- electrical connection of a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

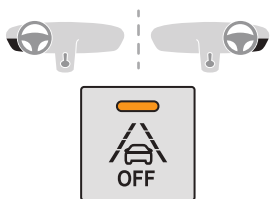
- insufficient contrast between the road surface and the shoulders (e.g. shade),
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following driving situations:

- driving on bad, unstable or very slippery (ice) road surfaces,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation



- ☞ Press this button to deactivate/reactivate the system at any time.



Deactivation is signalled by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the button and of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

The system is **reactivated automatically** every time the ignition is switched on.

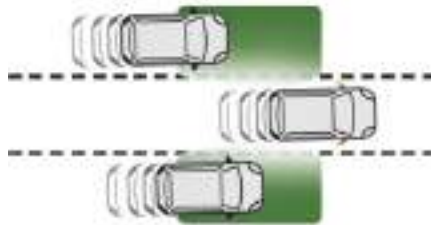
Malfunction



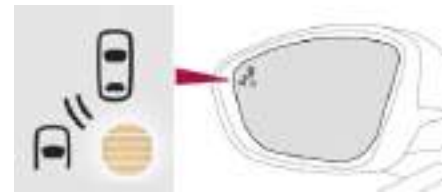
A fault with the system is signalled by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, bicycle) in the blind spots of the vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



This is signalled by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

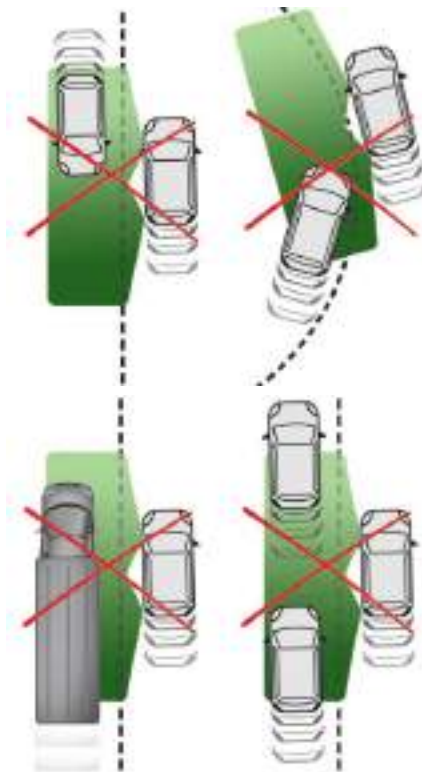
The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by the Manufacturer.

Conditions for operation

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h) (versions without Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT) or between 19 and 87 mph (30 and 140 km/h) (versions with Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT).
- When you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When another vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- In the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.).
- Oncoming traffic.
- Driving on a winding road or a sharp corner.
- When overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is present both in the rear blind spots and in the driver's front field of vision.
- When overtaking quickly.
- In very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
- If the Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT function is activated.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Active Blind Spot Detection

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicator activated, to help you avoid a collision.

This system is the combination of the Active Lane Departure Warning System and Blind Spot Detection.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h).

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on the **Active Lane Departure Warning System** and **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



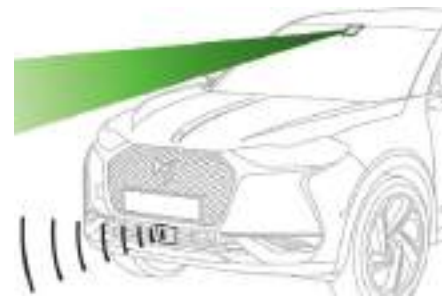
This system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front, a pedestrian or, depending on version, a cyclist,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

i The system also takes motorcyclists and animals into account; however, animals below 0.5 m tall and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is comprised of three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert,
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunctional camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



This system can be deactivated or activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The ASR system must not be deactivated.

All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated once the use of a different diameter "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the two lateral brake lamps is detected.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Collision Risk Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front, or a pedestrian or cyclist present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian or cyclist present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can be modified via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- "Distant",
- "Normal",
- "Close".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speeds of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, signalling that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

Level 3: finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

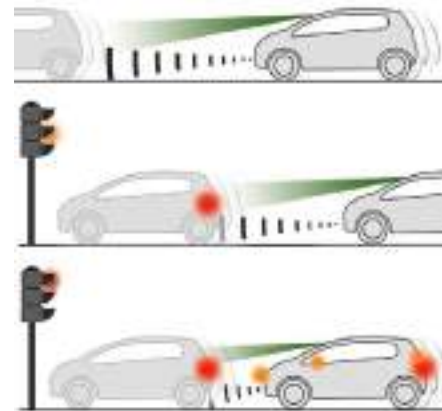
i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle or a cyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.



This warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

i The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

i Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

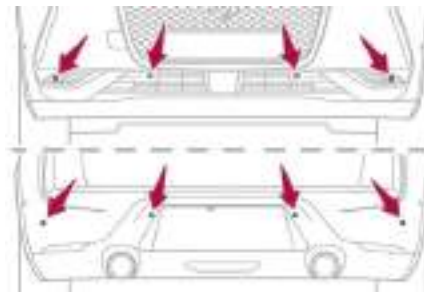


If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

Rear parking sensors

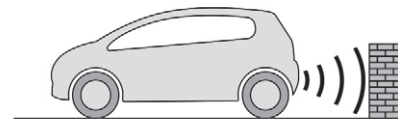
The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance

BIP... BIP... BIP...



The function signals the presence of obstacles within the sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

i Adjusting the audible signal



On versions equipped with DS CONNECT RADIO, pressing this button opens the audible signal volume adjustment window.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation



The function is deactivated and activated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist and DS PARK PILOT systems are measuring a space.

For more information on the **Park Assist** or **DS PARK PILOT**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

Malfunction



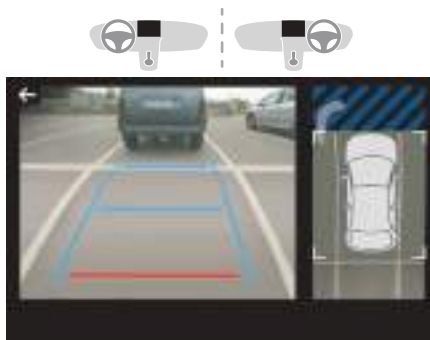
If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Reversing camera

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

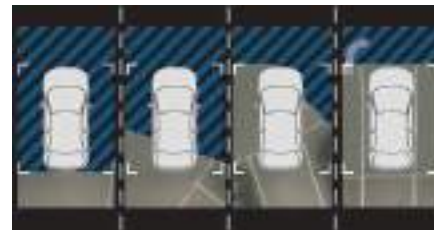
AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time, as the vehicle manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse gear at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

When the sub-menu is displayed, select one of the four views:



"Standard view".



"180° view".



"Zoom view".

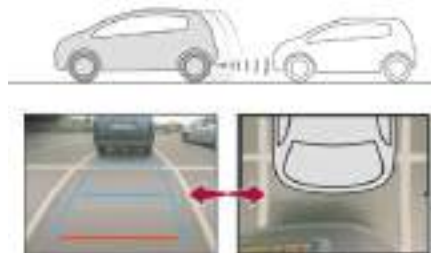


AUTO

"AUTO mode".

- i** The function will be deactivated:
- If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towing device (vehicle fitted with a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
 - Above about 12 mph (20 km/h).
 - On opening the tailgate.
 - When shifting out of reverse gear.
 - By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



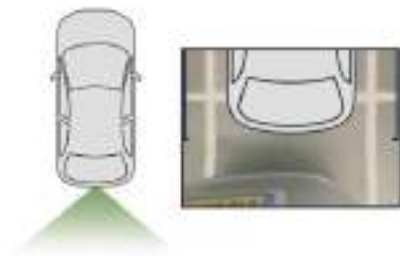
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its close surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**. This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance for vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox: it detects a parking space and then manages the steering to park in this space while the driver controls the driving direction, engagement of gears, acceleration and braking.

To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of the Reversing camera and the activation of the parking sensors.

The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

- A. Entering a "parallel" parking space.
- B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space.
- C. Entering a "bay" parking space.

Operation

- ☞ When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

Function activation

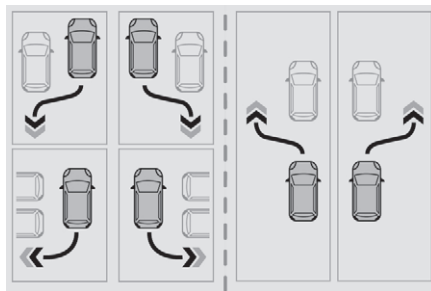


The function is activated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.
Select "**Park Assist**".

! Activating the function deactivates the Blind Spot Detection.

- i At any time, up to starting the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre, pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page deactivates the function.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.

- ☞ Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.
The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even when searching for an available space.



The selection is accompanied by this indicator lamp coming on.

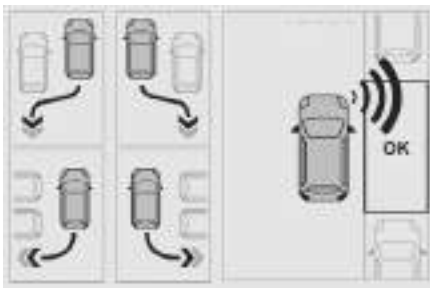
Parking space search

- ☞ You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search stops over this limit. The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

- i For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

- i If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.

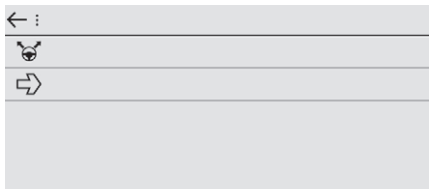


When the system finds an available space, "OK" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

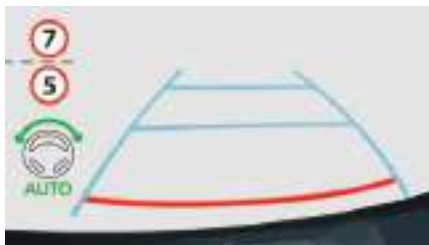


☞ Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**" and the "**STOP**" sign accompanied by an audible signal.



Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

☞ To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.



The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of this page, with the message "**Manoeuvre under way**", accompanied by an audible signal.

Reversing is indicated by this message: "**Release the steering wheel, reverse**".

The Reversing camera and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting the entry and exit "parallel" parking manoeuvres, and for all entry manoeuvres for "bay" parking.

These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:



"Reverse"



"Advance"

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress (green).



Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of the vehicle).

The maximum speed limit indications during the manoeuvres are signalled by these symbols:



4 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.



3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.) – risk of injury! It is the driver's responsibility to monitor the state of the traffic continuously, especially vehicles coming towards you. The driver should check that no object or person can hinder the advance of the vehicle.

i The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or by the system automatically.

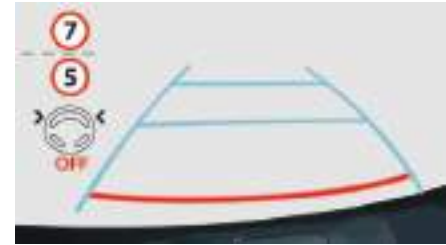
By the driver's action:

- taking over control of the steering,
- activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre,
- unfastening the driver's seat belt,
- switching off the ignition.

Interruption by the system:

- exceeding the speed limit: 4 mph or 7 km/h during parking space entry manoeuvres and 3 mph or 5 km/h during parking space exit manoeuvres,
- triggering of the anti-slip regulation on a slippery road,
- opening a door or the boot,
- stalling the engine,
- system malfunction,
- after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.

Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.



The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen. A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



The function is deactivated after a few seconds, this indicator lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.

The manoeuvring symbol is displayed in red accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre completed**" message on the touch screen.



Deactivation of the function is confirmed by this indicator lamp going off, accompanied by an audible signal.

If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered, because the width of the lane is insufficient.
- The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.

- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
- If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

The vehicle's sensors and camera(s) may be impaired by:

- accumulated snow or fallen leaves on the road,
- adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, falling snow),
- noise interference from noisy vehicles and machinery (lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.).

Malfunctions



When the function is not activated, the temporary flashing of this indicator lamp and an audible signal indicate a system fault.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the indicator lamp goes off.



If the fault in the parking sensors occurs during use, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

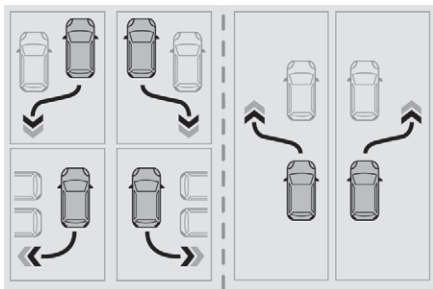
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS PARK PILOT

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

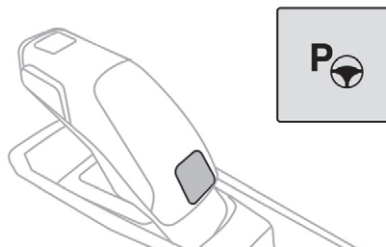
This system provides active assistance with parking on vehicles fitted with the EAT8 automatic gearbox: it detects a free "parallel" or "bay" parking space then operates the vehicle to park it there without intervention from the driver. It also allows you to drive out of a "parallel parking" space automatically.

The system manages control of the steering, direction of driving, acceleration and braking. It performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using 12 ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle. To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of the Reversing camera and activates the parking sensors.



To start the assistance when approaching a parking area:

- ☞ Reduce the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).



- ☞ Press the button on the gear selector or, on the touch screen, select **Driving/Vehicle > DS PARK PILOT**.

- ! Activating the system deactivates Blind Spot Detection.

Sequence

Once the system is activated, the following steps will follow successively:

- Choice of the type of manoeuvre via the touch screen.
- Search for available space.
- Preparing for the manoeuvre.
- Execution of the manoeuvre.
- Finalising the manoeuvre.

- i It is possible to deactivate the system at any time before the start of the manoeuvre: press the red arrow in the upper left corner of the screen.

- ! DS PARK PILOT is not always able to react automatically and appropriately due to the performance limits inherent to the system. The manoeuvre remains the responsibility of the driver, who must not leave the driving position and must never try to lock the system control button. The driver's seat belt must remain fastened during the manoeuvre.

Choice of the type of manoeuvre and search for space

Depending on whether the vehicle has been driven or not since the ignition was switched on, the function proposes the entry to or exit from a parking space on the touch screen.

- ☞ Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.



Illumination of this indicator lamp confirms activation.

It is possible to change the type of manoeuvre at any time, including during the available space search phase.

- ☞ Drive at a distance of 0.50 to 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, not exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space (indicated by **OK** on the display and an audible signal).

i For "parallel" parking, the length of the space must be at least equal to that of your vehicle plus 1 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be at least equal to that of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

- ☞ Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle and the **"STOP"** sign are displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

- ☞ To prepare for the manoeuvre, you must fulfil all of these instructions.



This symbol will be automatically displayed when the instruction has been applied.

Once all the instructions have been validated, a new screen is displayed, indicating that you can undertake the manoeuvre.



- ☞ To undertake the manoeuvre, press this button.

- ☞ While holding the button down, gradually release the brake pedal.

! The button must be held down throughout the manoeuvre.

The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of a screen with the message **"Manoeuvre under way"**, accompanied by an audible signal.

The Reversing camera and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle throughout the manoeuvre.

Carrying out the manoeuvre

As soon as the driver releases the brake pedal, the system automatically takes control of choosing the travel direction, forwards or reverse, acceleration, braking and the steering direction.

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress.



Manoeuvre interrupted.



Manoeuvre completed or abandoned (white arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of their vehicle).

The direction of the manoeuvre is indicated by these symbols:



Forwards.



Reverse.

The central arrow is green whilst the vehicle is moving, or white to indicate the next manoeuvring direction.

! Throughout the whole manoeuvre, indicated by the green **"AUTO"** symbol, the driver must hold the selector button down.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.) – risk of injury!

i If the vehicle slows down significantly, the brake lamps may come on.

Pausing/resuming the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre can be interrupted temporarily at any time, either automatically by the system if an obstacle is detected, or by driver action. If the driver sees a hazard risk, they may also interrupt the manoeuvre permanently.

To suspend the manoeuvre, the driver can:

- release the function control button,
- press the brake pedal,
- take back control of the steering,
- change the status of the gearbox (except changing to **P**).

Suspending the manoeuvre leads to the immediate immobilisation of the vehicle.



It is confirmed by the display of this symbol accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre suspended**".

- **Resume the manoeuvre, after resolving the suspension conditions:**
 - release all controls (brake pedal, function control button, steering wheel, etc.),
 - press the function control button again.
- **Permanent interruption after suspending the manoeuvre:**
 - press the brake pedal and engage a gear.

Abandoning the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is abandoned in the following situations:

- no action from the driver during the 30 seconds following the manoeuvre being suspended,
- voluntary application of the parking brake,
- engagement of gearbox mode **P** by the driver,
- unfastening of the driver's seat belt,
- opening of a door or the boot,
- activation of the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre,

- in certain cases, when a wheel of the vehicle hits a pavement or a low obstacle,
- triggering of the anti-slip regulation on a slippery road,
- stalling of the engine,
- sudden appearance in the field of the manoeuvre of an obstacle not detected by the system before the manoeuvre was started, with the obstacle remaining for more than 30 seconds,
- after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a "parallel" parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a "bay" parking space,
- system malfunction during the manoeuvre.

Abandoning the manoeuvre immediately triggers the vehicle's brakes and automatically deactivates the function.



This symbol is displayed, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre abandoned**" on the touch screen.

A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and the initial display is resumed.

The system automatically engages mode **P** in the gearbox after 4 seconds.

End of manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.



This symbol is displayed, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.



The function's deactivation is signalled by the extinction of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and return to the initial display.

- If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre. The gearbox changes to **P** 4 seconds after completion of the manoeuvre.
- In the case of a parking space exit manoeuvre, the gearbox changes to **N**. A message and symbol display prompt the driver to take back control of the vehicle. After a delay of 30 seconds with no action from the driver, the gearbox automatically changes to mode **P**.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which does not allow the vehicle to follow the trajectory required for parking.
- The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered because the width of the lane is insufficient.
- The system is not designed to perform parking manoeuvres on a steep slope or on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- The system may be impaired by incorrect inflation of the vehicle's tyres.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is heavily loaded can affect the distance measurements.

Malfuncions



When the function is not activated, the temporary flashing of this indicator lamp and an audible signal indicate a DS PARK PILOT fault. If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



If the fault in the parking sensors, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, occurs during DS PARK PILOT use, it causes the function to deactivate.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

TOTAL & DS

A DYNAMIC PARTNERSHIP, DIRECTED TOWARDS THE FUTURE.

For more than 45 years, TOTAL and DS have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to DS engines, making them even more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for servicing your vehicle; this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.



DS prefers **TOTAL**



Compatibility of fuels



Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.



Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards respectively and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50% full.

At temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 53 litres.

Reserve level: 6 litres.

Low fuel level



When the level in the tank becomes low, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel is left in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards 0.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

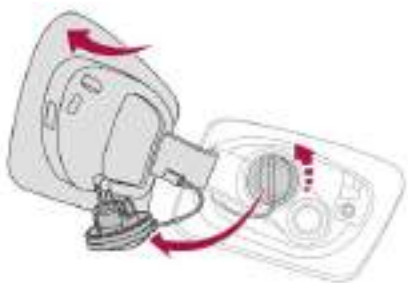
A label inside the fuel filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- ☞ Turn the filler cap to the left.

- ☞ Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Introduce the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Fill the tank.

Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn it to the right.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

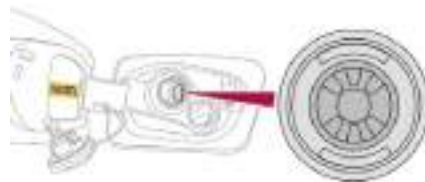
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)

This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is inserted into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.


i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with a dealer, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Towing device

Distribution of loads

 Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum load which can be towed must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their genuine wiring harnesses approved by the Manufacturer. It is recommended that the fitting be performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop. If not fitted by a dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated if an approved towing system is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on the vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Observe the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain type
215/65 R16	Polaire XP9 with manual locking
215/60 R17	Cannot be fitted with chains
215/55 R18	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ☞ To fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Roof bars

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for the vehicle.

Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.



To install the roof bars, you must secure them only to the four fixing points on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle's doors when they are closed.

The roof bar fixings include a lug to be fitted into the hole at each fixing point.

! Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm: **75 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load set out in the manual supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

! Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.

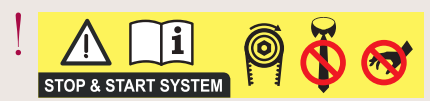
Secure the load securely.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.

Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Bonnet



Stop & Start

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

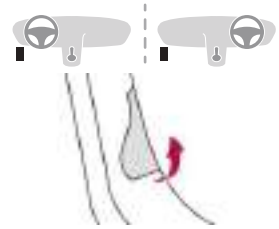
i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening the bonnet when the left-hand front door is closed.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area. When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch. Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

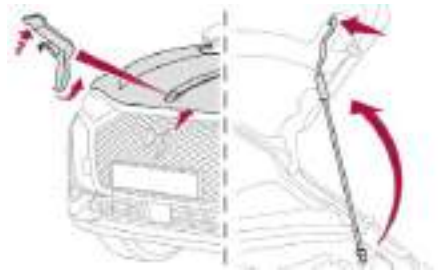
! **Cooling of the engine when stopped: The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!**

Opening

- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.



- ☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.
- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

This engine example is given for illustration purposes only.

The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Engine oil dipstick.

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health and may be very corrosive.

e Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The oil level is checked on a level surface with the engine stopped for at least 30 minutes, using the dipstick.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

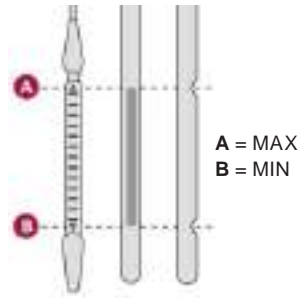
! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, non-fluffy cloth.

- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



- Do not start the engine** if the level is:
- Above mark **A**, then contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
 - Below mark **B**, then top up the engine oil immediately.

i Oil grade
Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i During the 30 minutes after topping up the oil, the check performed with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! If topping up, clean the cap before replacing it. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant



Check the engine coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark but should never exceed it. If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a ready-to-use mixture.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an agent to prevent freezing must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to protect the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, jets, etc.).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **AdBlue range indicators**, refer to the corresponding section. To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on the **Supply of AdBlue**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Cabin filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

i A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

i **New vehicle**
The first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

i After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in case of an issue, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold".

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi) SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 5,600 miles (9,000 km), **highly dependent** on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle disabled.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: the vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting. In either case, a range indicator gives the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is immobilised.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

- ! In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
 - Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
 - Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

AdBlue® can be obtained from a dealer or a qualified workshop as well as at service stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention. If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), risks of the release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Vapours containing ammonia have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never put the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

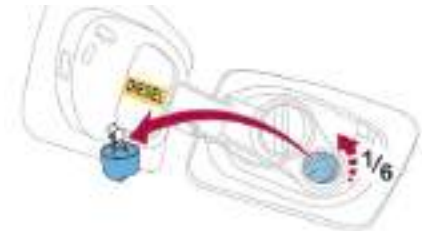
! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth. If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue breakdown**, you must wait about 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment.**

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Practical information

- ☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button to switch off the engine.



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.

- ☞ Release the blue cap.

- ☞ Obtain a container of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank:

- Top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

Or

- Do not continue after the nozzle's first automatic cut-off if you are refilling at a service station.

! If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

e Do not dispose of AdBlue® containers in the household waste. Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you bought them.

Warning triangle

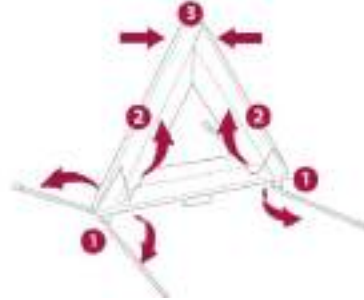
As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Storage



Use the straps on the boot sill trim to stow the folded triangle or its storage box.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above. For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

- ☞ Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

Before priming, at least 5 litres of Diesel fuel must be added to the tank.

For more information on **Refuelling** and **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the starter motor to start the engine.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Tool kit

This is the set of tools provided with your vehicle.

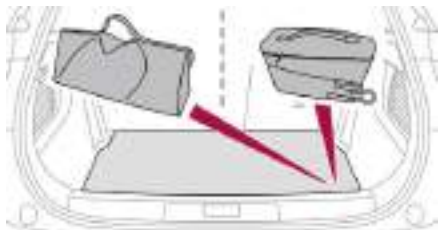
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

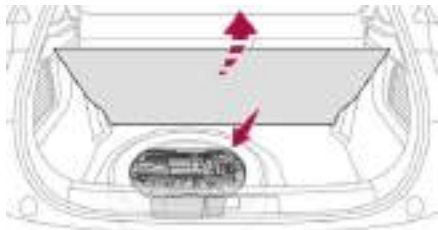
Access to the tools

Depending on version, the tool kit is stored in a bag on the boot carpet or in a storage box under the boot carpet.

In the event of a breakdown



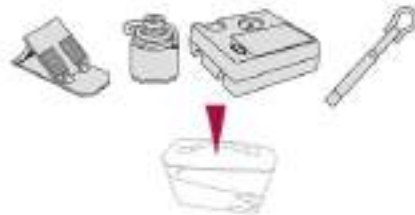
On the boot carpet



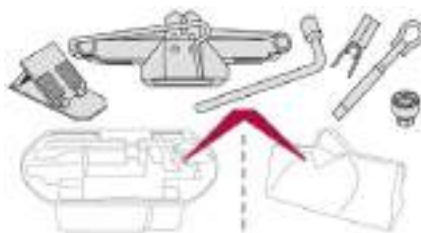
Under the boot carpet

- ☞ Raise the boot carpet by pulling the strap to access the tools.

Versions with a temporary puncture repair kit



Versions with a spare wheel



- ! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.

- ! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle. If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE. The jack does not require any maintenance.

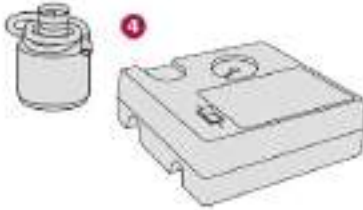
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (depending on equipment). For adapting the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

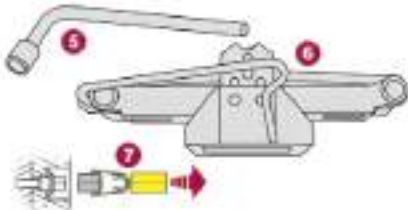
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with a cartridge of sealant and a speed limit sticker. For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace. For removing the wheel trim and the wheel bolts.

6. Jack with integrated handle. To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap remover (depending on equipment). For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

- i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread.

- i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair the damaged tyre.

- i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country of driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

In the event of a breakdown

! Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.

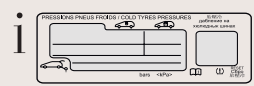


- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



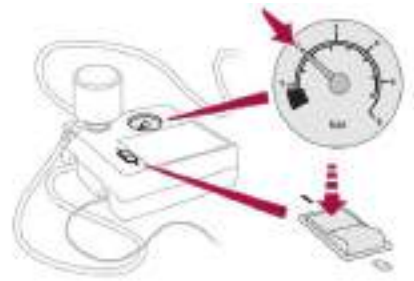
☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Switch on the ignition.



☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to position "I" until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Turn the switch to position "O".
- ☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Refit the cap on the valve.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Remove the kit.
- ☞ Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

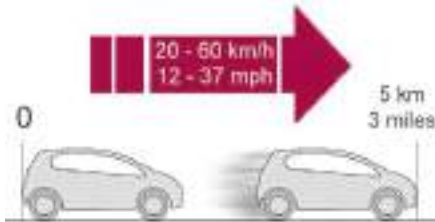
! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



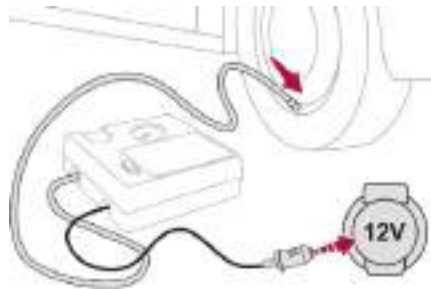
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km). Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

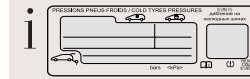
It is also possible to use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

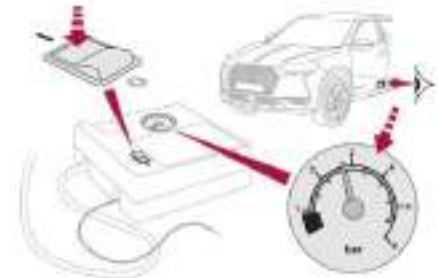


- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

In the event of a breakdown

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
- ☞ Remove the kit and stow it.

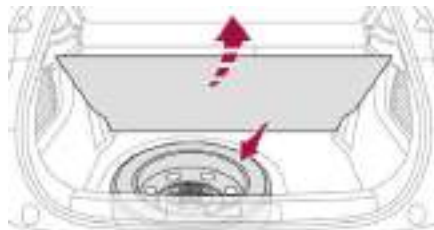
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

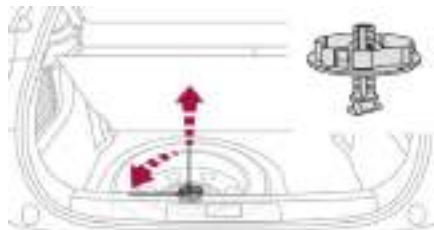
Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is stored under the boot carpet.

i The spare wheel is a "space-saver" wheel.

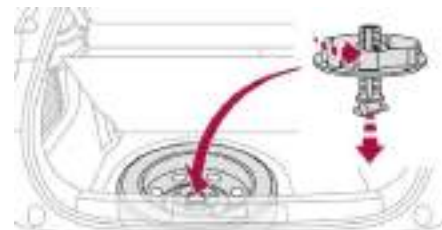
Removing the spare wheel



- ☞ Slacken the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place

! The punctured wheel cannot be placed in the boot under the floor.



- ☞ Put the wheel back in place in its housing.
- ☞ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ☞ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Depending on version, store the tool box in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Removing a wheel

! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

Check for the fixed illumination of the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

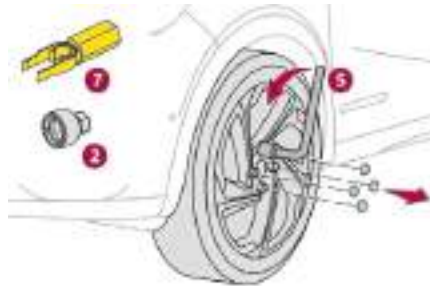
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

i Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

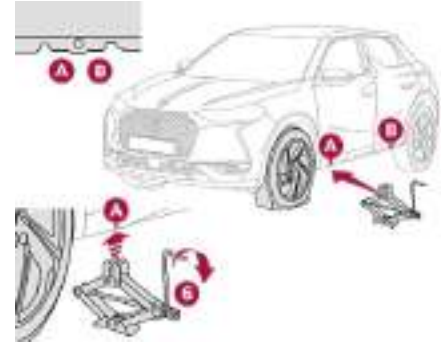
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



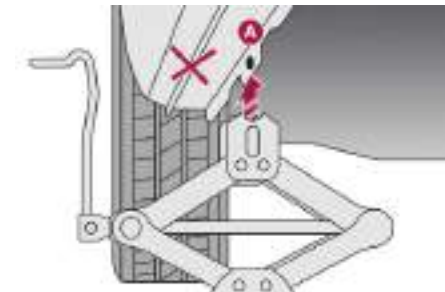
- ☞ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.

In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



In the event of a breakdown

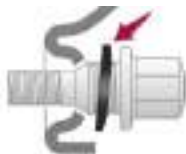
- ☞ Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing – risk of injury!



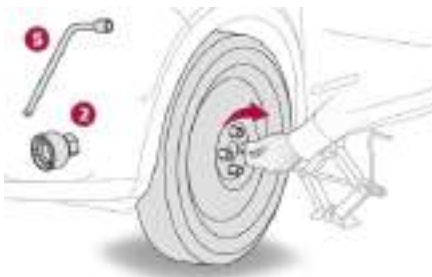
- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

Fitting a wheel



i Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheels, the washers do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

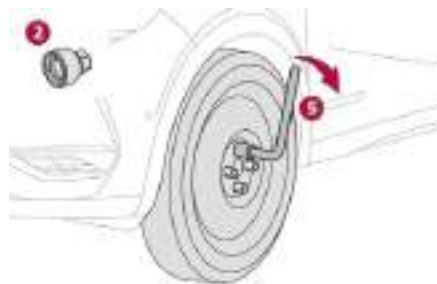


- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.

- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.

- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 5 only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools.

After changing a wheel



- ! **With a "space-saver" type spare wheel**
Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive Cruise Control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

- ! Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
 - ☞ **do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – risk of serious burns!

Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification.

- ! **After changing a bulb**
To refit, carry out the fitting operations in reverse order.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:

- "DS MATRIX LED VISION" headlamps.
- Offset daytime running lamps.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.

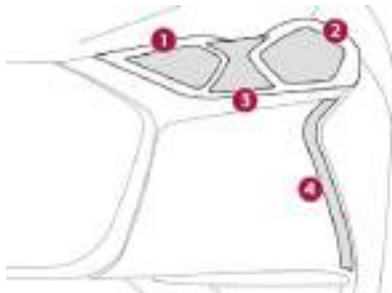
In the event of a breakdown

- Side spotlamps.
- Rear lamps with "Full LED" technology.
- Third brake lamp.
- Number plate lamps.

! For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch the "Full LED" technology lamps – risk of electrocution!

Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. Main beam headlamps (H7).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Direction indicators (PWY24).
4. Daytime running lamps (LED).

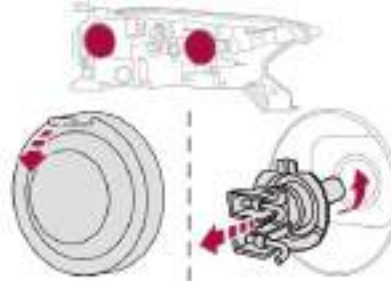
!

STOP & START SYSTEM

Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs
With the engine warm, proceed with caution – risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine cooling fan – risk of strangulation!

i **Halogen bulbs (Hx)**
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Main beam headlamps/Dipped beam headlamps



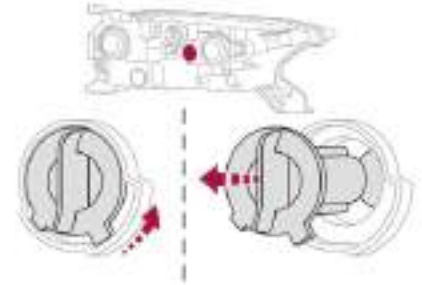
☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.

- ☞** Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞** Remove the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the bulb's positioning lug downwards.

Direction indicators

i Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

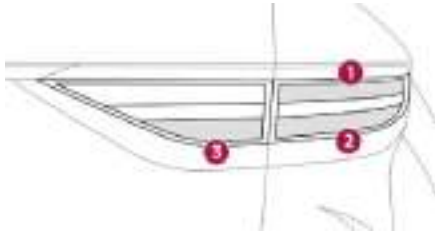


- ☞** Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞** Pull the bulb connector.
- ☞** Remove the bulb and change it.

i Amber-coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Rear lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. Brake lamps/sidelamps (W21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (WY16W amber).
3. Reversing lamps (W16W).

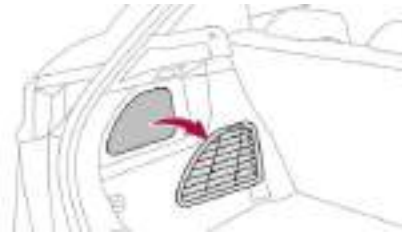
Direction indicators and brake lamps/sidelamps

i Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

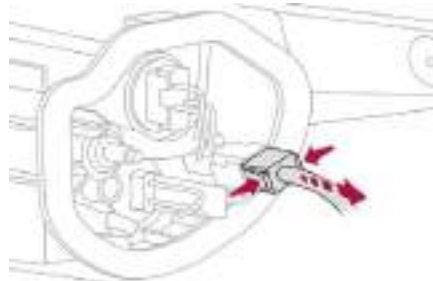
i Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

These bulbs are changed from inside the boot.

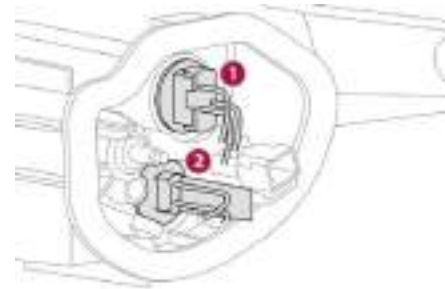
- ☞ Open the boot.



- ☞ Remove the access flap on the corresponding side trim, so that the lamp unit fixing screw can be accessed.
- ☞ Slacken the lamp unit fixing using a socket wrench.
- ☞ Finish slackening it by hand to recover the nut, **making sure not to let it drop**.
- ☞ Remove the lamp unit.
- ☞ Unclip the lamp unit connector.



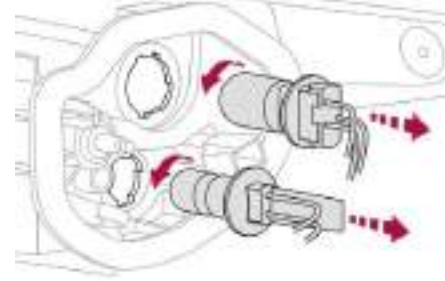
- ☞ Squeeze and pull the connector.



1. Brake lamps/Sidelamps
2. Direction indicators

Once the lamp unit is disconnected and released, remove the lamp unit so that the bulbs can be changed:

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and replace it.

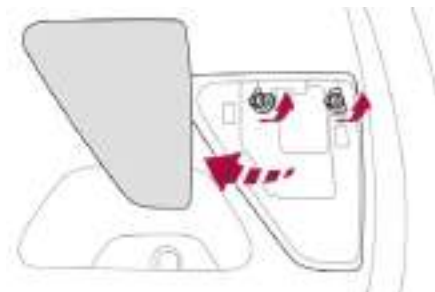


In the event of a breakdown

- i Engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp unit.

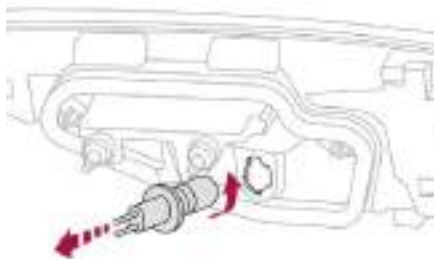
Reversing lamps (tailgate)

- ☞ Open the tailgate.



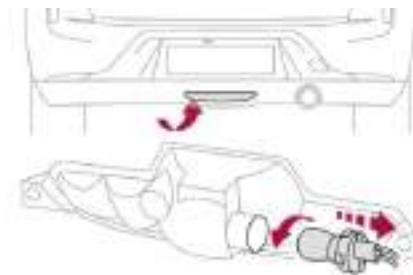
- ☞ Remove the access cover and undo the two lamp unit fixing nuts using a socket wrench.
- ☞ Squeeze and pull the connector to remove it.

Once the lamp unit is disconnected and released, remove the lamp unit so that the bulbs can be changed:



- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

Foglamp (P21W)



For access, pass your hand under the bumper on the left-hand side.

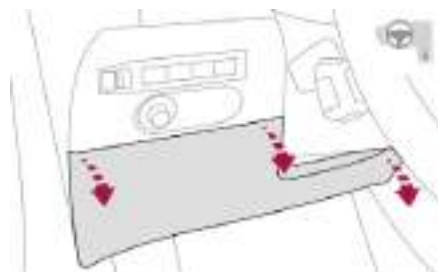
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.

- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools

The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Remove the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.



- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Press on the centre handle of the fusebox cover.
- ☞ Lower the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.

To replace a fuse, you must:

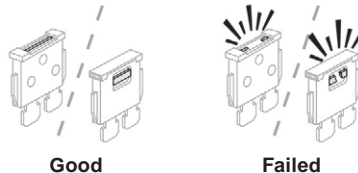
- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.

- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

- ! The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a dealer or from a qualified workshop.

- ! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



Tweezers

! Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

In the event of a breakdown

Dashboard fuses

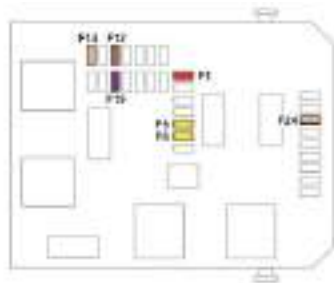
The fusebox is located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

To access the fuses, follow the same procedure as that described for accessing the tools for changing fuses.

For more information on **Access to the tools**, refer to the corresponding section.

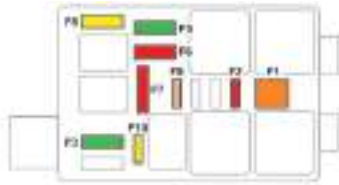
Fuse tables

Box 1



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10 A	Electrochrome rear view mirror, radar, electric power steering.
F5	20 A	Rear screenwash pump.
F6	20 A	Front screenwash pump.
F12	7.5 A	Diagnostic socket.
F14	5 A	Emergency and assistance calls, alarm control unit.
F19	3 A	Trailer interface unit, top of steering column.
F24	5 A	Hi-Fi amplifier, parking sensors, camera, touch screen.

Box 2

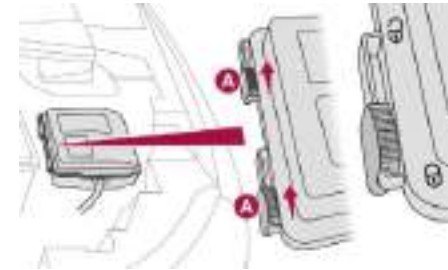


Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40 A	Heated rear screen.
F2	10 A	Heated door mirrors.
F3	30 A	Front electric windows.
F5	30 A	Rear electric windows.
F6	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F7	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F8	20 A	Left-hand side retractable handles.
F9	25 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F10	20 A	Right-hand side retractable handles.

Engine compartment fuses

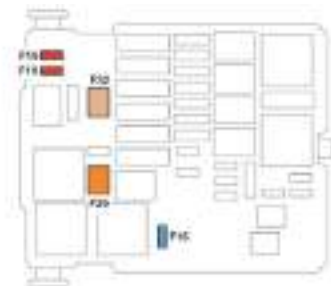
The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches **A**.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse tables



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F16	15 A	Right-hand main beam Full LED headlamp.
F18	10 A	Right-hand main beam halogen headlamp.
F19	10 A or 15 A (depending on version)	Left-hand main beam halogen headlamp or left-hand main beam Full LED headlamp.
F29	40 A	Windscreen wipers.
F32	80 A	Power supply.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

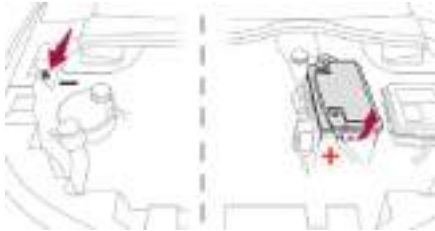
Lead-acid starter batteries

e Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ Unlock the bonnet by activating the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- ☞ Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

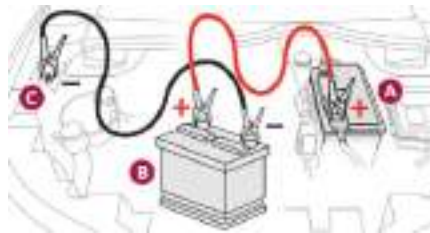
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to the moving parts of the engine (fan, belt, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
 - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
 - ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ☞ Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ☞ Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

In the event of a breakdown

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- using the vehicle mainly for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

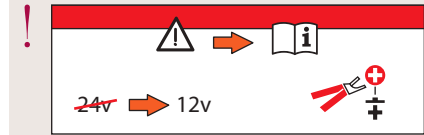
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ If the vehicle has one, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

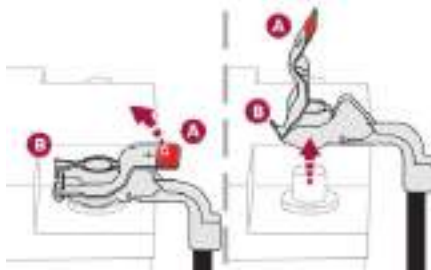
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal clamp

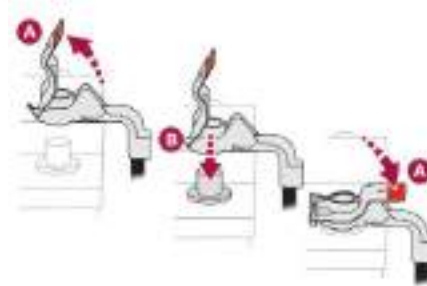
Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

- ☞ Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
- ☞ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise certain systems, such as:

- the electronic key,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the next engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

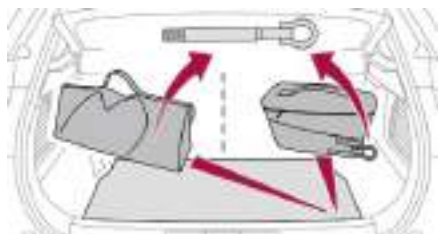
In the event of a breakdown

Towing the vehicle

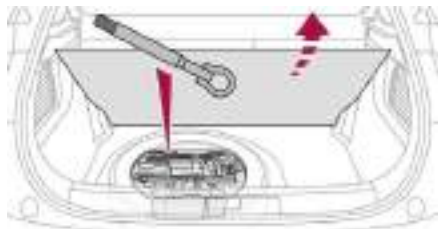
Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

Access to the tools

The towing eye is stored with the on-board tool kit (in a bag on the boot carpet or in a box under the boot carpet, depending on version).



On the boot carpet

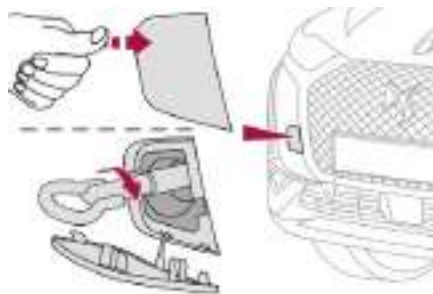


Under the boot carpet

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pressing at its top left corner.
- ☞ Release the cover to the right and then downwards.

To be towed:

- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

- ! ☞ Put the gearbox into neutral.
- ! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground with the engine off.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pressing at its left part.
- ☞ Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving. Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

! A professional towing service must be called if:

- Broken down on a motorway or main road.
- Not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake.
- Not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running.
- Towing with only two wheels on the ground.
- Four-wheel drive vehicle.
- No approved towbar available.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures. These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

! Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Engines and towed loads – Petrol

Engines	PureTech 100 S&S	PureTech 130 S&S	PureTech 130	PureTech 155 S&S	PureTech 155
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	EB2ADTD MB6 STTd	EB2ADTS ATN8 STTd	EB2ADTSM ATN8	EB2ADTX ATN8 STTd	EB2ADTXM ATN8
Model codes UR...	HNKK	HNSS	HNSS	HNNS	HNNS
Cubic capacity (cm ³)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	74	96	96	115	115
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,200	1,200	500	1,200	500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	620	640	500	640	500
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	48	48	48	48	48

Engines and towed loads – Diesel

Engines	BlueHDi 100	BlueHDi 130
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Codes	DV5RD MB6 STTd	DV5RC ATN8 STTd
Model codes UC...	YHYJ	YHZR
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	93
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,200	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	640	640
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	48	48

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is stamped on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

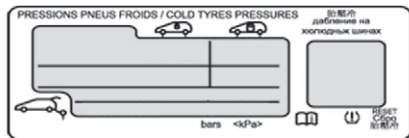
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the windscreen lower cross member.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label on the middle door pillar contains the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

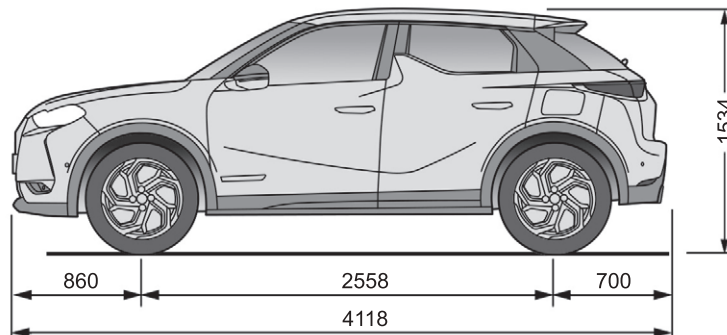
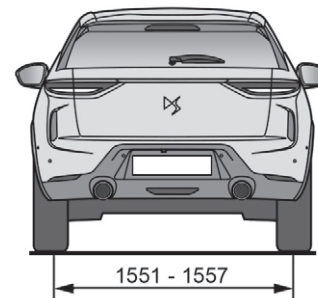
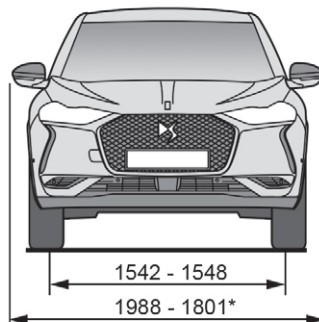
D. Tyres/paint code label.

This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

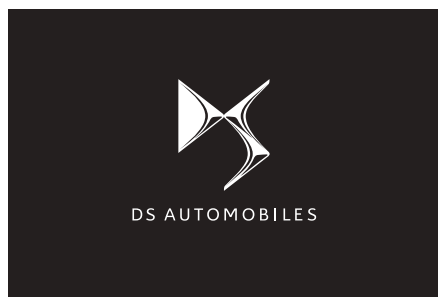
Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



* Mirrors folded

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system



Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Radio	4
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	5
Media	5
Telephone	7
Settings	9
Frequently asked questions	10

i The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound. With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Increase or decrease the volume using the thumbwheel on the left-hand side.



To access the menus, press this button on the touch screen.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

! To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product. Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Air conditioning information (depending on version).
- Bluetooth connection.
- Indication of location data sharing.

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

Selection of the audio source:

- FM/AM/DAB radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.

The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Long press: display the call log.

Short press during an incoming call: accept the call.

Short press during a call in progress: end the call.



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Change the multimedia source.



Short press: display the calls log.

Short press during an incoming call: accept the call.

Long press during an incoming call: reject the call.

Short press during a call in progress: end the call.



Radio (rotate): previous/next preset station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

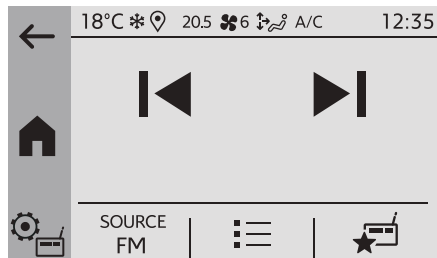
Media: display the list of tracks.

Menus

Radio



Select a radio station.



Media



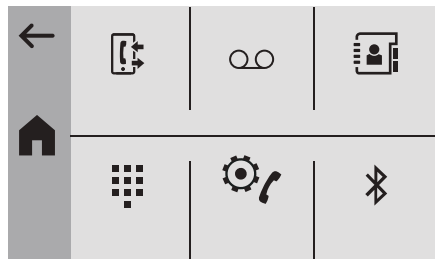
Select an audio source.



Telephone



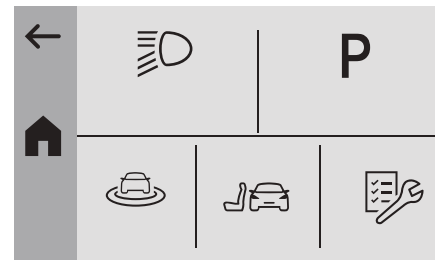
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.



Driving



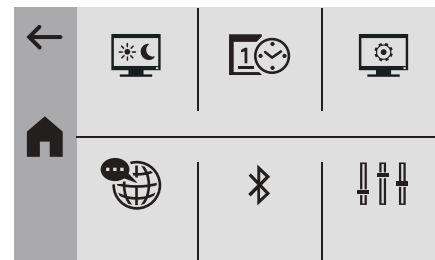
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions (depending on equipment/version).



Settings




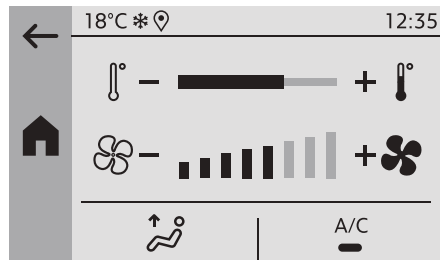
Adjust the sound settings (balance, ambience, etc.), the display (language, units, date, time, etc.), the system (privacy).



Air conditioning/Heating

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Radio

Choosing the band



Press the "Radio" menu.

Press the "SOURCE" button.

Choose the band: **FM**, **AM** or **DAB**, depending on equipment.

Selecting a station



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press on the displayed frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

Or



Press this button to display the list of stations received and available on the waveband.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press the "Presets" button.

Make a long press on an empty line to preset the station. An audible signal confirms the presetting of the station.

It is possible to preset up to 16 stations.

i To replace a preset station by the currently playing station, make a long press on the preset station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.

i In certain conditions, tracking may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.



Press the "Radio Settings" button.



Activate/Deactivate "RDS options".

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.

To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement (TA)**".

Audio settings



Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.

In the list, select "**Audio Settings**".

Activate/deactivate and configure the available options (sound balance, ambiences, etc.).

i The sound balance/distribution is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to where the passengers are sitting in the vehicle.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Choosing the DAB radio

Terrestrial digital radio (DAB) provides higher quality reception.

The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press the "**Radio**" menu.

Press the "**SOURCE**" button.

In the list of available sources, choose "**DAB Radio**".

Activating FM-DAB Tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.



Activate "**DAB-FM**".

i If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.

Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

Selecting the source

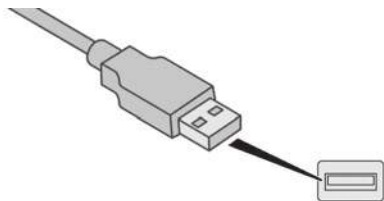


Press the "**Media**" menu.

Press the "**SOURCE**" button.

Select the source (USB, Bluetooth or AUX, depending on equipment).

USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

The playlists are updated every time a USB memory stick is connected or the contents of the same USB memory stick are changed. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "**Aux Amplification**" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (for example, an MP3 player) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Management of the controls is via the portable device.

Bluetooth® streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library. The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Media settings



Press the "**Media Settings**" button.

Activate/deactivate track playback options and access the audio settings.

i The audio settings are the same as the audio settings for the radio. For more information on the "**Audio settings**", refer to the corresponding section.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".mp3", ".mp4", ".m4a", ".flac", ".ogg" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps (300 Kbps maximum for ".flac" files).

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names be less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT or FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Up to 10 phones can be paired to the system. Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone beforehand and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check for services availability in the phone's manual and with the operator.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, DID, A2DP, AVRCP, SPP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

Procedure from the system



Press the **Home** button to access the menus.



Select the "**Telephone**" menu.

Press "**Manage connections**".

The list of telephones detected is displayed.

Select the name of the telephone in the list.

The system offers to connect the telephone with two profiles:

- as "**Telephone**": hands-free kit, telephone only.
- as "**Streaming**": wireless playing of audio files on the telephone.

! The system cannot be connected to multiple telephones with the same profile. No more than 2 phones can be connected simultaneously (**1 per profile**).

i The Bluetooth profiles chosen on the phone have priority over the profiles selected on the system.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

i Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and the call log.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

Managing paired telephones

To connect or disconnect a paired telephone:



Select the "**Telephone**" menu.



Press "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the "**Bluetooth**" button.

Press "**Manage connections**".

In the displayed window select "**Delete**".

The list of paired devices is displayed.

Press on the name of the telephone to delete.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

To accept the call:



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

To reject the call:



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Or



Press "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**".



Press the "**Keypad**" button.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**OK**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press the "**Telephone**" menu.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**".

Press "**Calls**".

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i A call in progress remains active in the vehicle for 10 minutes after switching off the ignition. After that, the system switches off and the call automatically redirects to the telephone.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Settings

Adjusting the brightness



Press "**Settings**".



Select "**Display**".



Press the buttons to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Modifying system settings



Press "**Settings**".

Press "**System**".



Press "**Privacy**" to access the privacy settings.



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Press "**System Info**" to check the system version.

Privacy settings

Three data privacy options are available:



"No data sharing (data, vehicle position)"



"Data sharing only"



"Sharing data and the vehicle position"



When sharing of data and vehicle position are enabled, this symbol is displayed in the upper bar of the touch screen.

Selecting the language



Press "**Settings**".



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date and time



Press "**Settings**".



Press "**Date/Time**".

Setting the date:



Press the arrows to set the day, month and year.



Setting the time:



Press these buttons to set hours and minutes.



Select or deselect the 24h format.



In 12h format, choose "**AM**" or "**PM**".

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time.

Date format:



Select the display format of the date.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio system.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.</p>	<p>Press the "Radio Settings" button then select "Update list". The radio reception is cut off while searching for available stations (approximately 30 seconds).</p>
	<p>Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience is deselected. When changing the ambience, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an ambience imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.</p>

DS CONNECT RADIO



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Applications	5
Radio	5
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	7
Media	8
Telephone	10
Settings	14
Frequently asked questions	16

i The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

! For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the audio system.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.

<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>

<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

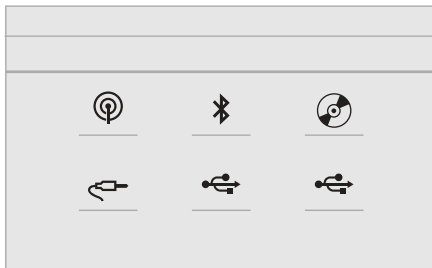
! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu it is possible to create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering multiple settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiances, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

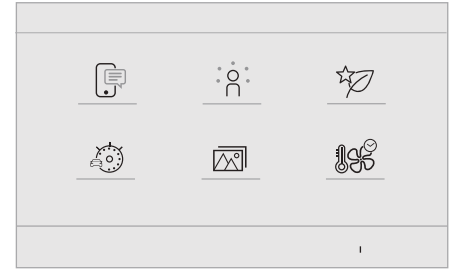
Menus

Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Access configurable equipment.

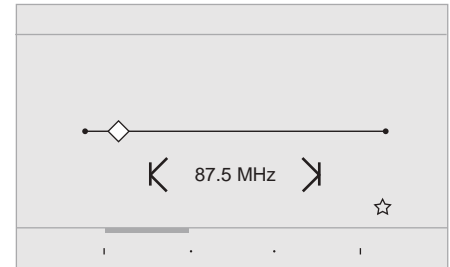


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source or radio station.

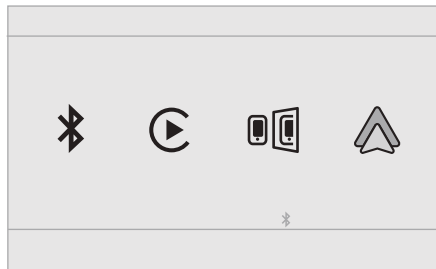


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

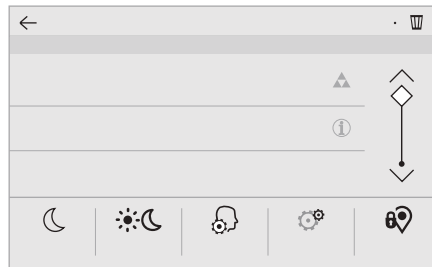


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

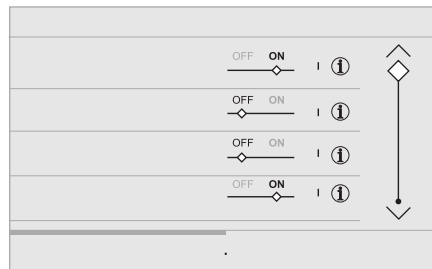


Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

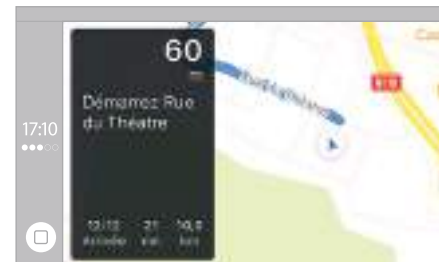


Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

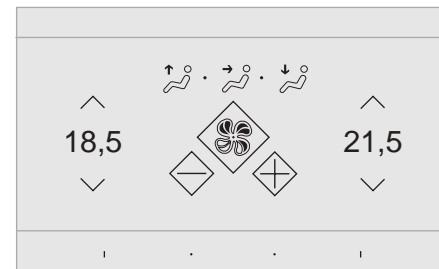


Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**INFO**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources. In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".



! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.



! On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



! Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press **Band** to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB tracking



! "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

DS CONNECT RADIO



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".

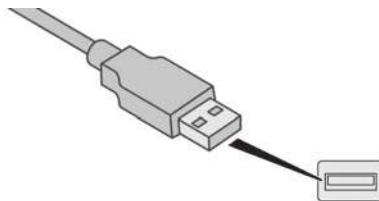


Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system. Management of the controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is via the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

10 DS CONNECT RADIO

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

- It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

• The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

• The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink**™" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink**™" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

i When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.



It is possible to go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection



On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.




From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.




Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.


OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

 When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®


 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.


 Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.


Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.


Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).


Procedure from the telephone

 Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.


In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.


 To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.


Procedure from the system

 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


 Press "**Bluetooth search**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.

 Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.


 If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

 Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

 On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or





Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.


Calling a new number


 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.


 Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

 Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact


 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

 Or make a long press

 on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press "**Contacts**".


Select the desired contact from the list offered.


 Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

 Make a long press


 on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".


Select the desired contact from the list offered.


i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

 Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Setting the profiles



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

Adjusting brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Press **"System configuration"**.

Press the **"Units"** tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the **"Factory settings"** tab to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the **"System info"** tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the **"Privacy"** tab,

or



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Privacy"** to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"No sharing (data, vehicle position)"**.
- **"Data sharing only"**
- **"Sharing data and the vehicle position"**



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Screen configuration"**.

Press **"Brightness"**.



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **"Animation"**.



Activate or deactivate: **"Automatic scrolling"**.



Select **"Animated transitions"**.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Language"** to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.</p>	<p>Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.</p>
	<p>Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.</p>

DS CONNECT NAV



GPS navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Voice commands	4
Navigation	12
Connected navigation	14
Applications	17
Radio	20
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	22
Telephone	24
Settings	28
Frequently asked questions	30

i The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

! For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition switched off:

- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the audio system.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

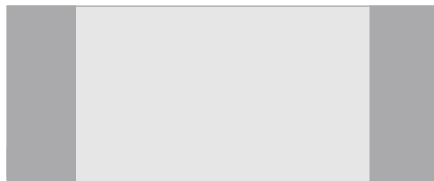
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

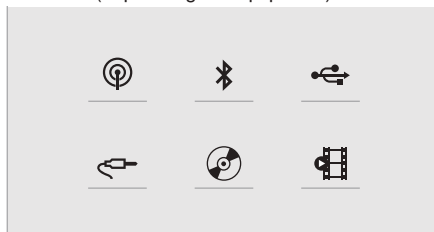
Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



i Using the "Settings" menu, create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:


This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.


- Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

 **Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

 **Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

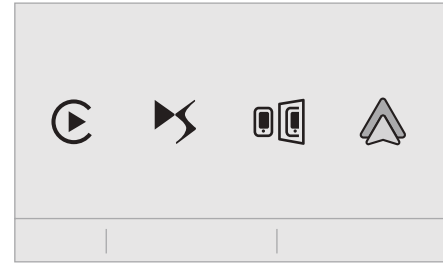


Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

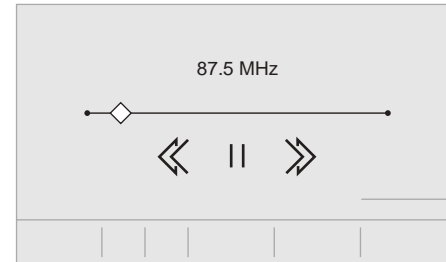


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

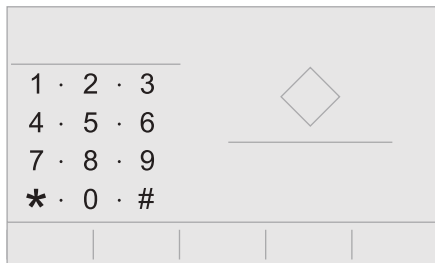


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

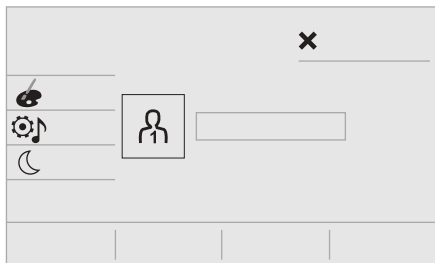


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

Voice commands can be made from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist Madonna"

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller"

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

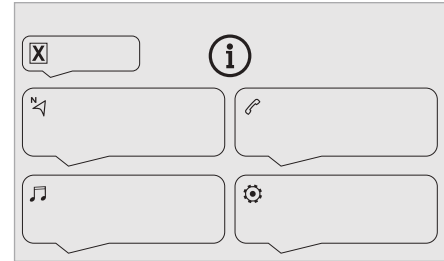
Information – Using the system



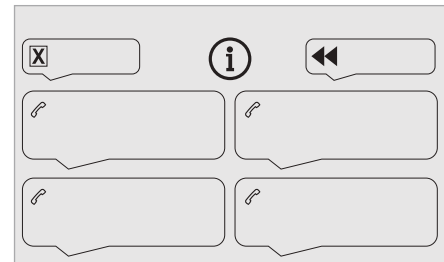
Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.





When the voice commands are activated by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and allowing interaction with the system by voice.





After a menu has been selected, some commands are proposed.



Global voice commands

 Voice commands	 Help messages
	<p>There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".</p>
	<p>Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.</p>
Set dialogue mode as novice – expert	
Select user 1/Select profile John	
Increase temperature	
Decrease temperature	

"Navigation" voice commands



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	<p>To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".</p> <p>To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club	
Navigate to contact, John Miller	
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London	
Tell me the remaining distance	<p>You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".</p>
Tell me the remaining time	
Tell me the arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Show POI hotel at the destination	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
Show nearby POI petrol station	
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London	
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route	

To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

• Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.



"Radio Media" voice commands

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Turn on source radio – Streaming Bluetooth – ...	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Tune to channel BBC Radio 2 Tune to 98.5 FM Tune to preset number five	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing?	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play song Hey Jude Play artist Madonna Play album Thriller	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

i Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call David Miller*	<p>To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".</p> <p>To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
Call voicemail*	
Display calls*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

i The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to make a short pause between each word. At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<p>Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late</p>	<p>From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
<p>Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving</p> <p>Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me</p>	<p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.</p>
<p>Listen to most recent message*</p>	<p>To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p>

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out/in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the house number, the navigation system will show one of the ends of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.



A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.



Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "Longitude" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version
Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



i For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connected navigation connection

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the internet, to the connected services, and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

i **Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

USB connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

i This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "**Notifications**".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i Usage restrictions:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services will be available.

i The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (as an option).

i Processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, it is recommended to **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".
- "**Display recommended speed**".

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".





Activate or deactivate:

- "**Advise of car park nearby**", "**Filling station alert**", "**Risk areas alert**", "**Accident black spot alert**" then select the alert symbol, "**Give an audible warning**", "**Advise proximity of POI 1**", "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".




To have access to connected navigation, select the option: "**Authorise sending information**" in "Settings".

 It is possible to access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper bar.

 The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Notification of "Danger zones"

 To issue notification of danger zones, select the option: "**Allow notification of danger zones**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Report a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger zone".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

Authorising sending information



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**Privacy mode**" tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**".
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**".

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".




Select the "**System info**" tab.




Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".

 It is possible to download system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure is also available there.

 After the updates have downloaded, installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the **CarPlay**® technology, the **CarPlay**® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the **CarPlay**® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the **CarPlay**® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the **CarPlay**® function deactivates the system's **Bluetooth**® mode.

i When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to **Radio Media** mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Vehicle apps



Press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet browser**" function.

Press "**Internet browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select the country of residence.



Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".



The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".



Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi connection sharing**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and to make the set of systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band..." displayed at the bottom right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information



The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band..." at the top centre of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Management of the controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Depending on equipment

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".
Choose the source.

Watching a video

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.



Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Sources**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is via the audio system controls. Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment). In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".

The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".



Activation of the "**Mobile internet data**" profile is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection



On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.



Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to messages or email may be slow.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check the user guide for the smartphone and with the service provider for the available services.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Setting the profiles



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket. Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

! Reinitialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English by default, as well as degrees Fahrenheit, and turns off summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	Other than navigation instructions, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the " function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	<p>Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.</p>
---	---	--

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).</p>	<p>Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).</p>	<p>Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.</p>
<p>The CD is ejected every time or is not played.</p>	<p>The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.</p>	<p>Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content if it is a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD player does not play DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.</p>

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new external media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound from the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.</p>	<p>The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.</p>	<p>The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.</p>	<p>To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance:) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>
<p>When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.</p>	<p>Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.</p>
<p>The date and time cannot be set.</p>	<p>Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.</p>	<p>Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).</p>

A

Accessories76
 Active Lane Keeping
 Assist20, 23, 122, 127-128, 130
 Active Lane Departure
 Warning System20, 131, 136
 Active Safety Brake19, 136-138
 AdBlue®21-22, 26, 162
 AdBlue® tank163
 Additive, Diesel161
 Adjusting headlamps66
 Adjusting head restraints47
 Adjusting seats46-47
 Adjusting the air distribution53-54
 Adjusting the air flow53-54
 Adjusting the date16, 29
 Adjusting the height and reach
 of the steering wheel48
 Adjusting the lumbar support47
 Adjusting the seat angle46
 Adjusting the temperature53-54
 Adjusting the time10, 16, 30
 Advanced Traction Control80
 Advice on driving6, 96-97
 Airbags18, 83, 85-86, 88
 Airbags, curtain84, 86
 Airbags, front83-85, 88
 Airbags, lateral84-85
 Air conditioning52-53, 56
 Air conditioning, automatic54
 Air conditioning, manual53
 Air intake56
 Air vents51
 Alarm42-44
 Amplifier, audio59
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS)13, 16, 78-79
 Anti-slip regulation (ASR)78-79
 Anti-theft/Immobiliser38, 98
 Apple CarPlay connection11, 17
 Armrest, front58

Assistance, emergency braking78, 138
 Assistance call77-78
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth)5-6, 8-9, 23

B

Battery, 12 V160, 180-183
 Battery, charging182
 Battery, remote control40
 Battery charge (warning lamp)12
 Blind Spot Detection134
 Blind Spot Detection, Active136
 BlueHDi14, 21-22, 26-27, 160, 165
 Bluetooth (hands-free)7-8, 12, 24-25
 Bluetooth (telephone)7-8, 12-13, 24-26
 Bonnet157
 Boot13, 41-42, 63
 Brake discs161
 Brake lamps175-176
 Brakes161
 Braking13-14
 Braking, automatic emergency19, 136-138
 Braking assistance system78
 Brightness9, 15
 Bulbs174
 Bulbs (changing)173-176

C

Cable, audio23
 Cable, Jack23
 Cap, fuel filler154
 Capacity, fuel tank153-154
 CD5, 8, 23
 CD, MP35, 8, 23
 Central locking36-37
 Changing a bulb173-176
 Changing a fuse176-180
 Changing a wheel166, 170

Changing a wiper blade73-74
 Changing the remote control battery40
 Charger, induction59
 Charger, wireless59
 CHECK27
 Checking the levels158-160
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) ... 167, 169
 Checks158, 160-161
 Checks, routine160-161
 Child lock95
 Children82, 89, 91-92, 94
 Children (safety)95
 Child seats82, 86-87, 89
 Child seats, conventional89
 Child seats, i-Size94
 Child seats, ISOFIX91-92
 Closing the boot36, 41-42
 Closing the doors36, 40-41
 Collision Risk Alert19, 136-137
 Configuration, vehicle31-32
 Connection, Bluetooth7-8, 12-13, 19, 24-26
 Connection, MirrorLink10-11, 18
 Connection, Wi-Fi network19
 Container, AdBlue®163
 Control, back-up boot release42
 Control, back-up door38-39
 Control, heated seats48
 Controls, steering mounted103-107
 Control stalk, lighting64-65
 Control stalk, wipers71, 73-75
 Courtesy lamp, front61
 Courtesy lamps61-62
 Cover, load space62
 Cruise control116-117, 119-122
 Cruise control, adaptive122-123
 Cruise control, adaptive with
 Stop function116-117
 Cruise control by speed limit
 recognition116-117

D

- DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio 5, 7, 22
- Date (setting) 16, 29
- Daytime running lamps 65, 174
- Deactivating the front passenger airbag 83-84, 88
- Deadlocking 34, 36
- Defrosting 56
- Demisting 56
- Demisting, rear 56
- Demisting, rear screen 56
- Dials and gauges 8
- Dimensions 189
- Dipstick 158
- Direction indicators 23, 65, 174-176
- Display, head-up 10
- Display screen, instrument panel 8, 108
- Doors 13, 40-41
- Driving 96-97
- Driving aids (recommendations) 112
- Driving aids camera (warnings) 113
- Driving economically 6
- Driving modes 107
- DS Connect Nav 1
- DS Connect Radio 1
- DS Park Pilot 147
- Dynamic stability control (DSC) 16, 78-80

E

- Eco-driving (advice) 6
- ECO mode 107
- Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 13, 78-79
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 78
- Emergency call 77-78
- Emergency switching off 99
- Emissions control system, SCR 22, 27, 162
- Engine, Diesel 14, 18, 153, 158, 165, 188

- Engine, petrol 158, 187
- Engine compartment 158
- Engine oil pressure 12
- Engines 186-188
- Engine self-diagnosis 16
- Environment 6, 40
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 78
- Extended traffic sign recognition 117

F

- Filling the AdBlue® tank 160, 163
- Filling the fuel tank 154
- Filter, air 160
- Filter, oil 161
- Filter, particle 161
- Filter, passenger compartment 52, 160
- Fitting a wheel 171-172
- Fitting roof bars 156
- Fittings, boot 62
- Fittings, interior 57
- Flap, fuel filler 154
- Fluid, brake 159
- Fluid, engine coolant 12, 159
- Foglamp, rear 22, 64, 175-176
- Folding the rear seats 51
- Frequency (radio) 21
- Fuel 6, 153
- Fuel consumption 6
- Fuel tank 153-154
- Fusebox, dashboard 177
- Fusebox, engine compartment 177, 179
- Fuses 176-179
- Fuses, dashboard 178
- Fuses, engine compartment 180

G

- Gauge, fuel 153-154
- Gearbox, automatic 103-108, 110, 161, 182
- Gearbox, manual 103, 108, 110, 161
- Gear lever, manual gearbox 103
- Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 108
- Glove box 57
- G.P.S. 13

H

- Hazard warning lamps 76, 165
- Headlamp adjustment 66
- Headlamps, automatic dipping 24, 68-70
- Headlamps, automatic illumination 66
- Headlamps, dipped beam 23-24, 174-175
- Headlamps, halogen 66, 174-175
- Headlamps, main beam 24, 174
- Head restraints, front 47
- Head restraints, rear 50-51
- Head-up display 9-10
- Heating 51
- Hi-Fi system 59
- Hill start assist 17, 108
- Horn 77

I

- Identification, vehicle 188
- Ignition 99, 27
- Ignition on 99
- Immobiliser, electronic 98
- Indicator, AdBlue® range 26
- Indicator, coolant temperature 26
- Indicators, direction 23, 65, 174
- Inflating tyres 161

Inflating tyres (using the kit)..... 167, 169
 Infrared camera 113
 Instrument panel 8-9, 27, 29, 114
 Internet browser 19
 ISOFIX mountings.....91

J

Jack 166-167, 170, 23
 Jump starting 181

K

Key 33, 35, 38-39
 Key, electronic 35-36
 Keyless Entry and Starting 35-36, 98
 Key not recognised 99
 Key with remote control 33, 98
 Kit, hands-free 7-8, 12, 24-25
 Kit, temporary puncture repair 165-167, 169

L

Labels, identification 188
 Lamp, boot 63
 Lamps, parking 65
 LEDs – Light-emitting diodes 65, 174
 Level, AdBlue® 160
 Level, brake fluid 159
 Level, Diesel additive 161
 Level, engine coolant 26, 159
 Level, engine oil 158
 Level, screenwash fluid 72, 160
 Levels and checks 158-160
 Light-emitting diodes – LEDs 65, 174

Lighting, exterior 64
 Lighting, guide-me home 67
 Lighting, interior 61-62
 Lighting, welcome 67
 Lighting dimmer 28
 Load space cover 62
 Loading 62, 156
 Locating your vehicle 34
 Locking 34, 36, 38
 Locking from the inside 37
 Locking the doors 37-38
 Low fuel level 19, 153-154
 Lumbar 47-48

M

Maintenance, routine 114, 160
 Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 112
 Map reading lamps 61-62
 Markings, identification 188
 Massage function 47-48
 Mat 60, 114
 Memorising a speed 122
 Menu 11
 Menu, main 32
 Menus (audio) 3-4, 3-4, 3-4
 Menu short cuts 32
 Messages 27
 Messages, quick 27
 Mirror, rear view 49-50
 Mirror, vanity 57
 Mirrors, door 49, 56, 134-135
 Misfuel prevention 154
 Mountings, ISOFIX 91

N

Net, high load retaining 62

O

Obstacle detection 139
 Oil, engine 158
 Oil change 158
 Oil consumption 158
 On-board tools 62, 165-167
 Opening the bonnet 157
 Opening the boot 35, 41
 Opening the doors 35, 40-41
 Opening the windows 33

P

Pads, brake 161
 Paint colour code 188
 Park Assist 143
 Parking brake 161
 Parking brake, electric 13-17, 100-102
 Parking sensors, audible and visual 23, 139
 Parking sensors, front 140
 Parking sensors, rear 139
 Personalisation 8-9
 Plates, identification 188
 Player, Apple® 6, 9, 23
 Player, MP3 CD 27
 Player, USB 5, 8, 22
 Pre-heater, Diesel 18
 Pressures, tyres 161, 170, 188
 Pre-tensioning seat belts 82
 Priming the fuel system 165
 Profiles 14, 28
 Protecting children 83-84, 86-89, 91-92, 94
 Puncture 167, 169-170

R

Radar (warnings).....	112
Radio.....	4-5, 5-6, 8, 20-21, 23
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB).....	5, 7, 22
Range, AdBlue.....	21, 26, 160
RDS.....	4, 6, 21
Rear screen, demisting.....	56
Recharging the battery.....	182
Recirculation, air.....	56
Regeneration of the particle filter.....	161
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.....	111-112
Reinitialising the remote control.....	40
Reminder, lighting on.....	65
Remote control.....	33-36, 38
Removing a wheel.....	171-172
Removing the mat.....	60
Replacing bulbs.....	173-176
Replacing fuses.....	176-178, 180
Replacing the air filter.....	160
Replacing the oil filter.....	161
Replacing the cabin.....	160
Reservoir, screenwash.....	160
Reset trip.....	29
Rev counter.....	8
Reversing camera.....	113, 141
Reversing lamp.....	175-176
Roof bars.....	156
Running out of fuel (Diesel).....	165

S

Safety, children.....	83-84, 86-89, 91-92, 94
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel).....	161
Screen menu map.....	11
Screenwash.....	72
Screenwash, front.....	72
Screenwash, rear.....	73
Seat, rear bench.....	50
Seat angle.....	46
Seat belts.....	13, 18, 81-82, 89
Seats, electric.....	46-47
Seats, front.....	46-47
Seats, heated.....	48
Seats, rear.....	50-51, 87
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR).....	22, 27, 162
Selector, gear.....	103-107
Sensors (warnings).....	113
Serial number, vehicle.....	188
Service (warning lamp).....	14
Service indicator.....	25, 27
Service.....	14, 25, 160
Settings, equipment.....	31-32
Settings, system.....	9-10, 15, 29
Sidelamps.....	23, 65, 174-175
Smart Access.....	37, 99
Snow chains.....	111, 155-156
Socket, 12 V accessory.....	58
Socket, auxiliary.....	6, 8, 23
Socket, Jack.....	23
Socket, USB.....	58, 5-6, 8, 22
Speakers.....	59
Speed limiter.....	116-119, 122
Speed limit recognition.....	114, 116
Speedometer.....	8, 114
Sport mode.....	107
Stability control (ESC).....	78
Starting a Diesel engine.....	153
Starting the vehicle.....	98, 103-107

Starting using another battery.....	99, 181
Station, radio.....	4, 5-6, 20-21
Stay, bonnet.....	157
Steering mounted controls, audio.....	2, 2-3, 2
Steering wheel, adjustment.....	48
STOP (warning lamp).....	12
Stopping the vehicle.....	98, 103-107
Stop & Start.....	20, 23, 30, 53, 109-110, 153, 157, 160, 183
Storage.....	57-58
Storage box.....	62
Storage wells.....	62
Sunshine sensor.....	52
Sun visor.....	57
Synchronising the remote control.....	40

T

Tables of fuses.....	177-180
Tank, fuel.....	153-154
Technical data.....	187-188
Telephone.....	59, 7-9, 12-14, 24-27
Temperature, coolant.....	12, 26
Time (setting).....	10, 16, 30
TMC (Traffic info).....	14
Tool kit.....	62, 165-167
Topping up AdBlue®.....	163
Total distance recorder.....	28
Touch screen.....	30-31, 1, 1
Towbar.....	155
Towed loads.....	186-188
Towing.....	184-185
Towing another vehicle.....	184-185
Traction control (ASR).....	16, 78-80
Traffic information (TMC).....	14
Trailer.....	155

Trajectory control systems 78
 Triangle, warning 165
 Trip computer 29-30
 Tyres 161
 Tyre under-inflation detection 17, 110, 170

U

Unlocking 33, 35
 Unlocking from the inside 37
 Unlocking the boot 34, 36
 Unlocking the doors 37-38
 Unlocking the tailgate 36
 Updating the date 16, 29
 Updating the time 10, 16, 30
 USB 5, 8, 22-23

V

Ventilation 51-52
 Voice commands 4-7, 9-11

W

Warning and indicator lamps 11
 Warning lamp, airbag 18
 Warning lamp, battery charge 12
 Warning lamp, braking system 13-14
 Warning lamp, central STOP 12
 Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 18
 Warning lamp, door(s) open 13
 Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened ... 82
 Warning lamp, engine oil pressure 12
 Warning lamp, low fuel level 19
 Warning lamp, parking brake 13-17
 Warning lamp, seat belts 13, 82

Warning lamp, Service 14
 Warning lamp, STOP 12
 Warning lamps 11, 27
 Washer jets, heated 56
 Washing 114
 Weights 186-188
 Welcome lighting 68
 Wheel, spare 161, 165-167, 170
 Window controls 44
 Windscreen, heated 56-57
 Windscreen wipers 23, 72, 74
 Wiper, rear 73
 Wiper blades (changing) 73-74
 Wipers 71, 75
 Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 23, 74-75

The Manufacturer declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from the Manufacturer.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

10-18

CONDUENT
4Dconcept
XEROX



DS AUTOMOBILES

SPIRIT OF
AVANT-GARDE

DSautomobiles.com



ANG. 19D34.0040